

Oracle® Communications

Software Upgrade Procedure

Policy Management 7.5 to 9.x Upgrade Procedure

E86554-01

March 2017



CAUTION: Use only the upgrade procedure included in the Upgrade Kit.

Before upgrading any system, access the Oracle Customer Support site and review any Technical Service Bulletins (TSBs) that relate to this upgrade.

Refer to Appendix I Accessing the Oracle customer support site for instructions on accessing this site.

Contact My Oracle Support and inform them of your upgrade plans prior to beginning this or any upgrade procedure.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are “commercial computer software” pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION.....	7
1.1 Purpose and Scope	7
1.2 References	7
1.3 Software Release Numbering	7
1.4 Acronyms	7
1.5 Terminology.....	8
2. UPGRADE OVERVIEW	9
2.1 Upgrade Path	9
2.2 New for 9.x	9
2.3 SPR Upgrade to Rel 8.0 or 9.x	9
2.4 Upgrade Sequence.....	10
2.5 Customer Impacts	10
2.6 Rollback (Backout)	10
2.7 TPD Version	10
2.8 Server Hardware Platforms	10
2.9 Loading Application Software	10
2.10 Required Materials	11
2.10.1 Upgrade Media.....	11
2.10.2 Logins, Passwords and Server IP Addresses.....	12
2.11 Upgrade Manager Process	12
2.11.1 Overview	13
2.11.2 Operation Sequence for a Site Upgrade.....	15
2.12 Firewall	16
2.13 Known Limitations	17
3. UPGRADE PREPARATION	18
3.1 Prerequisites	18
3.1.1 Procedure 1: Verify Prerequisites	18
3.2 PMAC Upgrade	18
3.3 Plan and Track Upgrades	18
3.3.1 Procedure 2: Plan and Track Cluster Upgrades	19
3.4 Perform System Health Check (Upgrade Preparation)	21
3.4.1 Procedure 3: Perform System Health Check (Upgrade Preparation).....	21
3.5 Firmware Upgrades	21
3.6 Deliver Software to Sites	22

3.7 Deploy Software (Upgrade Preparation)	22
3.8 Deploying Upgrade Software to Servers	23
3.8.1 Procedure 4: Copy ISO images to Management Servers (PMAC)	23
3.8.2 Procedure 5: Copy ISO Images to Target Servers (PP5160, DL360, c-Class)	24
3.8.3 Procedure 6: Verify CMP Software Images	28
3.9 Verify Network Firewall Connectivity	30
3.10 Backups for Servers and the System	30
3.10.1 Procedure 7: Backups (System and Server) Location and Access	30
3.11 Collect Ddata Exports from the System	31
4. SOFTWARE UPGRADE CAUTIONS	32
5. UPGRADE CMP CLUSTERS	33
5.1 Upgrade Active Site CMP Cluster	33
5.1.1 Procedure 8: Upgrade Standby server at Primary CMP Site	34
5.1.2 Procedure 9: Make Upgraded Server Active	40
5.1.3 Procedure 10: Upgrade Second CMP Server and Primary Site, and Restore Cluster	46
5.2 Upgrade Secondary Site CMP Cluster (if Deployed by Operator)	52
5.2.1 Procedure 11: Upgrade Secondary-Site CMPs	52
6. UPGRADE SITES	60
6.1 Site Upgrade Preparations	60
6.1.1 Procedure 12: Configuration Preparations Procedure	60
6.1.2 Procedure 13: Key Exchanges from CMPs to MPE/MRA	61
6.1.3 Procedure 14: Key Exchanges Between Servers of MPE/MRA Clusters	62
6.1.4 Procedure 15: Verify Deployed Software Images at Site MPE/MRA Server	64
6.2 Upgrade MPE Clusters	65
6.2.1 Procedure 16: Upgrade MPEs – Site	65
6.3 Upgrade Site MRA Clusters	73
6.3.1 Procedure 17: Upgrade Site MRA	73
6.3.2 Procedure 18: 9.x Replication Activation	82
7. POST UPGRADE ACTIVITIES	85
7.1 Verify System Upgrade	85
7.1.1 Procedure 19: Verify System Upgrade	85
7.2 Additional Instructions	85
8. BACKOUT (ROLLBACK)	86
8.1 Backout Order	86
8.1.1 Procedure 20: Backout Partially-Upgraded Cluster	87

8.1.2 Procedure 21: Backout Fully Upgraded MPE/MRA Cluster.....	90
8.1.3 Procedure 22: Backout Fully Upgraded CMP Cluster	94
8.2 Backout of prepareUpgrade Command	98
8.2.1 Procedure 23: Remove Replication Exclusions (Backout of prepareUpgrade Command).....	98
8.2.2 Procedure 24: Backout of Replication Activation	101
8.2.3 Procedure 25: Recovery of Server from Backup	103
APPENDIX A. MANAGING HA STATUS OF SERVERS	105
A.1 Understanding the ha.states and ha.mystate commands	105
APPENDIX B. METHODS OF DELIVERING SOFTWARE UPGRADE ISO	107
B.1 Copy ISO from USB Key	107
B.2 Copy ISO from DVD {PP5160, DL360}.....	107
B.2.1 Procedure 26: Upgrade from Physical CD media {PP5160, DL360}.....	108
APPENDIX C. INSTALL PMAC 5.0 ON A C-CLASS SYSTEM.....	110
C.1 Preparations for Installation	110
C.1.1 Procedure 27. PMAC Health Check	113
C.1.2 Procedure 28. Backup the PMAC Application Data.....	114
C.2 Installation of PMAC 5.0	116
C.2.1 Procedure c-1. Install TVOE 2.0 on Management Server (DL360/DL380).....	116
C.2.2 Procedure c-2. Upgrade Management Server Firmware.....	117
C.2.3 Procedure c-3. TVOE/Management Server Network Configuration	119
C.2.4 Procedure c-4. PMAC Deployment Procedure	125
C.2.5 Procedure c-5. Configure the PMAC Server.....	128
C.2.6 Procedure c-6. Define netConfig Repository, and Store Switch Configuration Backups.....	133
APPENDIX D. BACKUP CONFIG OF THE SWITCHES TO PMAC	141
D.1 Backup 6120XG Enclosure Switch	141
D.2 Backup Cisco 4948/4948E/4948E-F Aggregation Switch	142
APPENDIX E. BACKOUT OF PMAC 5.0 TO PMAC 3.2	144
E.1 Procedure 29. PMAC Backout Procedure.....	144
APPENDIX F. TRANSFER FILES OR ISO FILES TO PMAC 5.0.....	145
APPENDIX G. ADDING ISO IMAGES TO THE PMAC FROM MEDIA.....	147
APPENDIX H. USING ILO (OR RMM) TO REMOTELY ACCESS A SERVER.....	151
APPENDIX I. ACCESSING THE ORACLE CUSTOMER SUPPORT SITE.....	153

APPENDIX J. USING THE SCREEN SHELL TOOL	154
J.1 Start Screen Session.....	154
J.2 Screen Logging	154
J.3 Screen Help.....	154
J.4 Other capabilities.....	154

List of Tables

Table 1: Logins, Passwords and Server IP Addresses.....	12
Table 2: Upgrade Manager Operations	13
Table 3: Upgrade Manager Firewall requirements.....	16
Table 4. Network Configuration capture	111
Table 5. Network Layout Worksheet	112

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Purpose and Scope

This document describes methods utilized and procedures executed to perform a Software upgrade to Release 9.x on in-service Policy 7.5.x servers.

NOTE: Release 9.x includes all the functionality of Release 8.0, plus additional features. This document provides for a upgrade directly to the 9.x Release.

It is assumed that the CMP, MRA and MPE Application media (ISO file, CD-ROM or other form of media) have been delivered to the customer's site(s) before upgrade, in order to have proper preparation for recovery operations. The distribution of the software load is outside the scope of this procedure.

The SDM-SPR Upgrade is not included in this Document.

1.2 References

- *Policy 8.0 Release Notes*, E56020-01
- *Feature Notice Release 8.0*, 910-6405-001
- *Policy Management 9.x Release Notes*
- *Feature Notice Release 9.x*
- *Policy 7.5 Platform Software Installation Guide*, 910-6291-001 Revision B
- *PMAC 3.x/4.x Disaster Recovery Guide*, 909-1638-001

1.3 Software Release Numbering

The Policy Management 9.x is comprised of several software components, the CMP, MPE, MPE-li and the MRA ISO files, each versioned separately. Refer to Policy Management 9.x Release Notes for the target release in order to identify the separate software components included in the release and their version numbers.

1.4 Acronyms

This section describes the acronyms used within this document.

BIOS	Basic Input Output System
BMC	Baseboard Management Controller
CD-ROM	Compact Disc Read-only Media
FRUSDR	Field Replaceable Unit – Sensor Data Record
GPS	Global Product Solutions
HSC	Hot Swap Controller
IP	Internet Protocol
IPM	Initial Product Manufacture
IPMI	Intelligent Platform Management Interface
ISO	ISO 9660 file system (when used in the context of this document)
MOP	Method of Procedure
NEBS	Network Equipment-Building System
PMAC	Platform Management and Configuration
RMM	Remote Management Module

SUP	System Update Package
TPD	Oracle Platform Distribution
UI	User Interface

1.5 Terminology

This section describes terminology as it is used within this document.

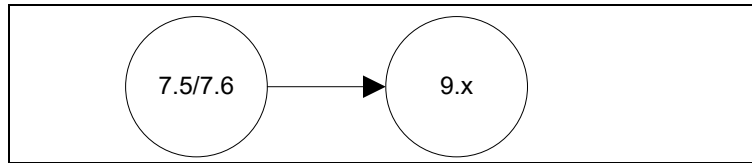
Firmware	Coded instructions and data programmed directly into the circuitry of read-only memory for controlling the operation of the server or one of its devices.
Platcfg	Refers specifically to the Platform Configuration Utility User Interface which is a text-based user interface.
Runlevel	A preset TPD operating state represented by a single-digit integer which designates a different system configuration and allows access to a different combination of processes.
System Health Check	Procedure used to determine the health and status of the server, typically performed using the TPD syscheck utility.
PP5160	The Oracle PP5160 Application Server. An Intel based, 1U NEBS compliant rack-mount server.
Upgrade	The process of converting a TPD based Policy 7.5.x server from its current software release to a newer release.
Upgrade Ready	State that allows for a successful software upgrade of a server. This requires bringing the server out of service and disabling certain processes.
Watchdog	A hardware timing device that triggers the server to reset if the OS, due to some fault condition, such as a hang, neglects to regularly service the watchdog.

2. UPGRADE OVERVIEW

This section lists the required materials and information needed to execute a Policy Management 9.x software upgrade.

2.1 Upgrade Path

The upgrade is supported from the Policy 7.5.x GA software releases.



2.2 New for 9.x

In Release 8.0, a new Upgrade Manager function is provided to improve the upgrade process. In Release 9.x, this function is further enhanced.

The Upgrade Manager function is built into the CMP. It is used to upgrade the MRE/MRAs, after the initial upgrade of the CMPs to the new release. I.e. the upgrade will be done for the CMPs first, and then the new Upgrade Manager is used to upgrade the remaining servers. This tool provides the option to upgrade multiple MPE clusters at a single site in parallel.

There is also an improved data replication service implemented in Release 8.0. Because the replication service extends between servers, it is necessary to upgrade all servers in the Policy system to 9.x, and then activate the new replication service between the servers. This adds new steps to the Upgrade activities, but is also simplified by the Upgrade Manager tool. It also has a specific “roll back” procedure in case of a problem with the new replication service.

NOTE: The new Replication service requires that certain additional tcp ports are open in the customer network between the CMP and MPE/MRAs.

The upgrade to 9.x does not require changes to existing Policies, call flows, or other design activities.¹

New Features provided in Policy Management 9.x can be activated after the upgrade, on a schedule and plan that is separate from the upgrade. These new feature activations may require planning, but are outside the scope of this document.

For a full list of new features in Policy Release 9.x, see the Policy 8.0 and Policy Management 9.x Feature release notices.

2.3 SPR Upgrade to Rel 8.0 or 9.x

NOTE: Subscriber Profile Repository (SPR) is an optional component of the Oracle Policy Solution. This section only applies to customers that use the Oracle SPR.]

It is recommended to upgrade to SPR 8.0 or 9.x (if SPR is used in the deployment) before the upgrade to Policy Management 9.x.

For a full list of new features in SPR Release 8.0 and 9.x, see the SPR related Feature release notices.

¹ This is the design intent of the release. The user should confirm in the Release notes if there might be exceptions to this that need to be managed before upgrade.

2.4 Upgrade Sequence

This procedure applies to an Active/Standby pair of servers (or a single server, if it is not configured with high availability). This pair of servers will be referred to as a “cluster” or “ha cluster”. The cluster type may be CMP, MRA or MPE. For CMP cluster, the cluster status may also be Primary site or Secondary site.

The customer deployment may consist of multiple clusters.

Required Cluster Upgrade Sequence:

1. CMP Primary site cluster
2. CMP Secondary site cluster
3. MRA and MPE clusters
4. New Replication activation

NOTE: There may be limitations² to the CMP management functions during the period when the CMP Active site cluster is on release 9.x and one or more MRA/MPE clusters are on release 7.5.x. For this reason, it is recommended that the deployed policies are not changed during the upgrade period.

2.5 Customer Impacts

The cluster upgrade proceeds by upgrading the standby server, and then switching over from the Active to the Standby, and upgrading the second server. A server boot is part of the Upgrade action.

2.6 Rollback (Backout)

Rollback is the reverse of the upgrade. The full pre-upgrade image is stored on the server during the upgrade, and can be restored from a command line.

2.7 TPD Version

The Oracle Product Distribution (TPD) version needed for this release is included in the Policy Application Software Upgrade ISO, and is upgraded also as part of this procedure.

2.8 Server Hardware Platforms

The Policy Management 9.x software upgrade can be used on any server that previously had the Policy 7.5.x release. This includes the PP5160, DL360G6, and BL460G6. Policy Management 9.x adds support for DL380G8, and BL460G8.

2.9 Loading Application Software

For upgrade of server Application software, the recommended method is to copy the Application ISO to the servers using scp/ftp. If the system is C-class, the Application software must also be loaded into the PMAC software management library to support new installs and FRU activities (PMAC is not used for Upgrade).

It is also possible to load software from a CD/DVD. The PP5160 and DL360 are Rack Mount servers, and have a front panel CD/DVD Drive. This can be used for the upgrade.

The BL460 is a blade server and does not have a CD/DVD Drive. However, the PMAC server (provided with C-Class solutions) has CD/DVD drive that is used to load and manage Application software (and TPD) versions. Software may be copied from PMAC to a blade server.

² Specific limitations are to be determined.

2.10 Required Materials

The following materials and information are needed to execute an upgrade:

- Target-release Policy Management 9.x software media. Either as an ISO image file or in physical CD media format.
- Target-release Policy Management 9.x software Upgrade Release Notes.
- The capability to log into the target server as root.

NOTE: The login may be through ssh, local console, or iLo/RMM maintenance port.

- The capability to secure copy (scp) from the local workstation being used to perform this upgrade to the target server, or otherwise be able to transfer binary files to the target server.
- User logins, passwords, IP addresses and other administration information. See Section 2.10.2.

VPN access to the customer's network is required if that is the only method to log into the target servers. It must be also possible to access the Policy Manager GUI, and the PMAC GUI (for a BL460 system). The GUI's may be tunneled via VPN for remote console access.

2.10.1 Upgrade Media

You must obtain a copy of the Policy Management 9.x software target release media. The media can be in either ISO image file format or physical DVD media. It is best to have both formats available before going to site.

The Policy Management 9.x software ISO image files will be in the following format:

872-254z-101-9.1.0_x.y.0-mpe-x86_64.iso

Where z is: 4-CMP, 5-MPE, 6-MPE-LI, 7-MRA

The Upgrade Media must be also delivered to the customer site prior to the execution of this upgrade procedure, in case recovery actions from the customer site become necessary. The distribution of media is outside the scope of this procedure.

If using ISO image files, it is assumed that the ISO image files have been delivered to a local workstation being used to perform this upgrade and any user performing the upgrade will have access to the ISO image files.

If the user performing the upgrade is at a remote location, it is assumed that the ISO files are already available to them before starting the upgrade procedure.

2.10.2 Logins, Passwords and Server IP Addresses

The IP Address assignments for each site, from the appropriate Oracle Network IP Site Survey (example: SS005938), must be available. This ensures that the necessary administration information is available prior to an upgrade.

Further, need to confirm login information for key interfaces, and document in table below.

[It is assumed that the logins may be common among the customer sites. If not, record for each site.]

NOTE: Consider the sensitivity of the information recorded in this table. While all of the information in the table is required to complete the upgrade, there may be security policies in place that prevent the actual recording of this information in permanent form.

Table 1: Logins, Passwords and Server IP Addresses

Item	Value
CMP servers (each CMP server)	GUI Administrator Login User/Password:
	root password: NOTE: This is the password for the root login on the servers. This is not the same login as the GUI or Application Administrator.
MRE/MPA servers (each server)	root password:
Target RMM/iLo (each server)	RMM Administrator Login: User/Password
Target OA (each C-class enclosure)	OA Administrator Login: User/Password
PMAC server (each C-class site)	GUI Administrator Login User/Password:
	root password: NOTE: This is the password for the root login on the servers. This is not the same login as the GUI or Application Administrator.
Software Upgrade Pack Target Release ³	Target Release Number:
	Policy Management 9.x software ISO Image (.iso) file names:

2.11 Upgrade Manager Process

The 9.x CMP supports an Upgrade Manager feature which is used to upgrade MRAs and MPEs.

³ The ISO image filenames should match those referenced in the Release Notes for the target release. If using physical CD media these ISO images will be extracted from the physical media during the upgrade process.

2.11.1 Overview

The Upgrade Manager collects and displays the Upgrade related status of the MPE and MRA servers, and provides a menu of operations for executing the required upgrade steps.

Like other CMP forms, the user must have privileges to use this tool.

The following operations are supported:

Table 2: Upgrade Manager Operations

Name	Description	Expected outcomes	The command call in remote server
Push Tool	Scp the upgrade script from CMP to the selected remote server(s)	Push Tool - Command returns Successful. Script policyUpgrade.pl is delivered to /opt/camiant/bin	policyUpgrade.pl --pushTool
Force Standby	Force the selected Active or Standby server to Force Standby	Force Standby - Command executed successfully. Status on the Upgrade Manager shows Forced Standby.	SOAP (HTTP/HTTPS)
Switch Force Standby	Make the Active Server to Force Standby, and the Force Standby Server to Active	Switch Force Standby - Command executed successfully. Status on the Upgrade Manager shows that the two servers in the cluster have switched roles.	SOAP (HTTP/HTTPS)
Cancel Force Standby	Cancel the selected server(s) force standby	Cancel Force Standby - Command executed successfully. Status on the Upgrade Manager shows Standby.	SOAP (HTTP/HTTPS)
Upgrade Completion	Turn off the selected server(s) Legacy Replication mode, and turn on new Replication mode	Command executed successfully. Inrepstat shows replication sync, no replication alarms. NodeInfo Exclusions are removed.	
Undo-Upgrade-Completion	Turn on the selected server(s) Legacy Replication mode	Command executed successfully. Inetstat show replication sync, no replication alarms. NodeInfo Exclusions are added.	policyUpgrade.pl --prepareUpgrade
Prepare Upgrade	Turn on the selected server(s) Legacy Replication mode	Command executed successfully. Inetstat shows replication sync, no replication alarms. NodeInfo Exclusions are added.	policyUpgrade.pl --prepareUpgrade
Start Upgrade	Kick off an upgrade on the selected server(s).	Start Upgrade - Command executed successfully. Upgrade Manager shows	policyUpgrade.pl --startUpgrade

Name	Description	Expected outcomes	The command call in remote server
		status of upgrade.	
Backout	Initiate a backout on the selected server(s).	Backout - Command executed successfully. Upgrade Manager shows status of upgrade.	policyUpgrade.pl --backOut

Example View of Upgrade Manager Form:

Policy Management - Windows Internet Explorer

http://10.240.238.71/mi/pages/mainFrameset.jsp

Tekelec Policy Management

Active Alarms: 4 3 5

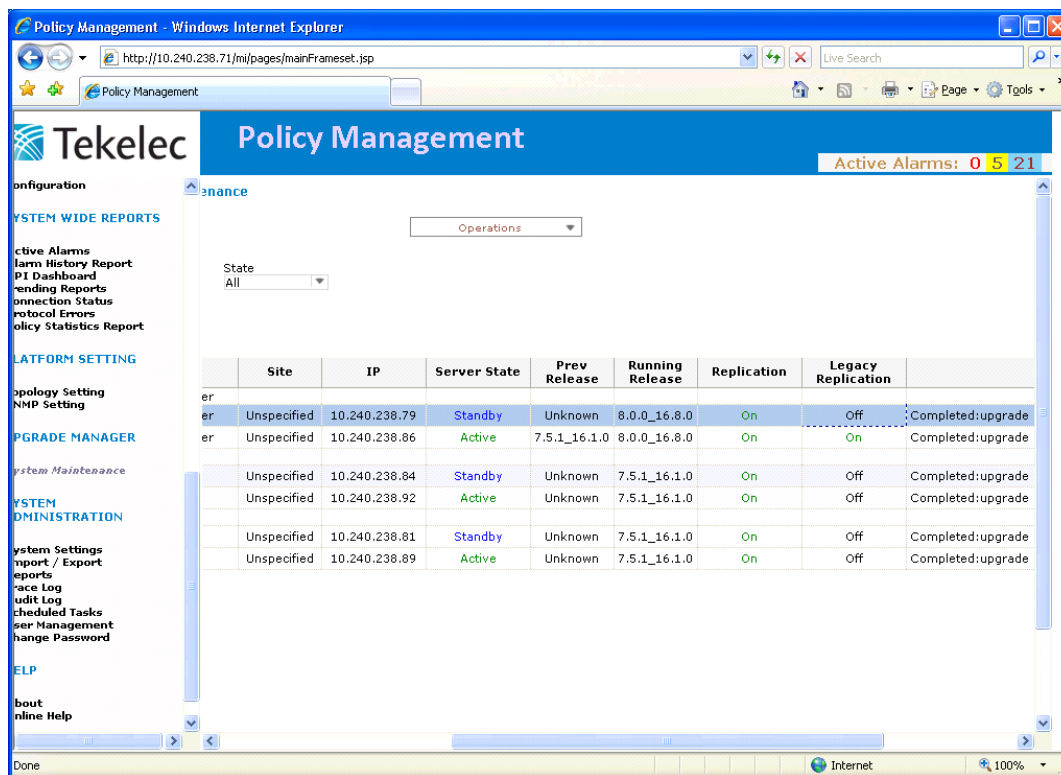
System Maintenance

Filters: Appl Type: All, Site: All, IP: All, State: All, Replication: All, Legacy Replication: All

	Name	Appl Type	Site	IP	Server State	Prev Release	Run Release
<input type="checkbox"/>	CMP Site1 Cluster	CMP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.240.238.79	Active	Unknown	8.0.0_
<input type="checkbox"/>	cs-tb31-cmpa	CMP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.240.238.86	Standby	7.5.1_16.1.0	8.0.0_
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	cs-tb31-mpe1a	MPE	Unspecified	10.240.238.84	Force Standby	7.5.1_16.1.0	8.0.0_
<input type="checkbox"/>	cs-tb31-mpe1b	MPE	Unspecified	10.240.238.92	Active	Unknown	7.5.1_
<input type="checkbox"/>	cs-tb31-mpe2a	MPE	Unspecified	10.240.238.81	Force Standby	7.5.1_16.1.0	8.0.0_
<input type="checkbox"/>	cs-tb31-mpe2b	MPE	Unspecified	10.240.238.89	Active	Unknown	7.5.1_

Operations

- Push Script
- Cancel Force Standby
- Turn Off Replication
- Turn Off Legacy Replication
- Start Upgrade
- Backout



2.11.2 Operation Sequence for a Site Upgrade

The following is the normal sequence for upgrade at a site (MPEs and MRAs), using the Upgrade Manager. Multiple servers may be upgraded in parallel.

Pre-requisites:

- All CMPs in Topology are already upgraded to 9.x.
- The Application ISO files are deployed to the servers (/var/TKLC/upgrade directory).
- Ssh key exchange is completed between CMP and every MPE/MRA
- Ssh key exchange is completed between the 2 servers of each MPE/MRA cluster
- Prior execute of “Prepare Upgrade”
- Push the Upgrade script from CMP to all MPE/MRAs at a site

Upgrade 1st of 2 servers in a cluster:

1. Select some or all standby servers and execute **Forced Standby**
Force Standby servers will not become Active
2. Select forced standby servers from previous step, and execute **Upgrade**
This steps takes 20 minutes
Confirm Upgrade completions for these servers
3. Execute “Switch ForceStandby”
This step causes a switchover to the 9.x Server for Active traffic, with a several second traffic impact
Confirm 9.x servers become Active and handle traffic

Upgrade 2nd of 2 servers in a cluster:

1. Select forced standby servers from previous step, and execute **Upgrade**
Confirm Upgrade completions for these servers
2. Cancel Forced Standby on these servers
Confirm 9.x servers Standby

Post-requisites (after all sites are upgraded):

1. Select all servers in the network, and execute **Upgrade Completion**
2. Remove Application ISO from the server's /var/TKLC/upgrade directory.

2.12 Firewall

The following protocol ports are used for managing data between Policy servers.

Table 3: Upgrade Manager Firewall requirements

Component	Port/Protocol
Tomcat	80/HTTP
	8443/HTTPS
SSH	22/TCP
Comcol	15360/TCP (cmsoapa)
	16810/TCP (inetsync)
	17398/TCP (inetrep)
	17400/TCP (inetrep)
	17401/TCP (cmha)
	16878/TCP (inetmerge)
	15616/TCP (lmysqld)

For Policy Management 9.x, the “inetrep” ports are new, and are used by the new Replication software.

The 17400 port is opened for listening on each MPE/MRA blade, and the Active CMP connects to this port for replication.

- Active CMP – connects to -- MPE/MRA Port 17400
- Primary Site Active CMP – connects to – Secondary Site Active CMP Port 17400

The 17400 port is also opened on the Standby MPE/MRA/CMP and for used for replication from Active to Standby servers in a cluster.

- Active MPE– connects to -- Standby MPE Port 17400
- Active MRA– connects to -- Standby MRA Port 17400
- Active CMP– connects to -- Standby CMP Port 17400

The same Firewall rules should also be applied to Port 17389, but this port may not be actively used unless the MPE/MRA Geo-Redundancy feature is enabled.

NOTE: As per PR 227003, if the user encountered the issue mentioned in the PR, i.e. during upgrade, default firewall rules are not applied during upgrade, user may have to Disable firewall before the upgrade and then re-enable firewall after the upgrade.

```
# su - platcfg
```

Select **Camiant Configuration** → **Firewall** → **Enable/Disable Firewall** → **Edit** → **Disable iptables/Enable iptables**

2.13 Known Limitations

The following is a list of Known Limitations for the operations of the system, during the period that the system is being upgraded (when there is a mix of 9.x and 7.5 servers in the network).

- The Backout of a fully upgraded MPE/MRA cluster will result in the loss of all state data (call sessions) for existing calls in-progress.
- The Backout of a partially upgraded MPE/MRA cluster will result in the resumed use of state data that will be partially out-of-date.
 - The 7.5 server will retain its state data after traffic is switched to the 9.x server of the cluster, but this data will no longer be updated from traffic activity at the 9.x server. If the traffic is switched back to the 7.5 server, it will resume traffic handling with the state data it has, which will be partially out-of-date depending on how long the 9.x server was Active.
- The Mode settings must not be changed during upgrade interval
 - After upgrading the CMP, if you change modes, then 7.5 MPEs are unable to process quota correctly (because UseLocalQuota gets set to true)
 - After upgrading both the CMP and the MPE, then we can no longer terminate Gy sessions (because the quota is all messed up)

3. UPGRADE PREPARATION

This section provides detailed procedures to prepare a system for upgrade execution. These procedures are executed outside a maintenance window.

3.1 Prerequisites

This procedure verifies that all required prerequisite steps needed to perform an upgrade have been completed.

3.1.1 Procedure 1: Verify Prerequisites

Step	Procedure	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify all required materials are present	Materials are listed in Section 2.10: Required Materials. Verify required materials are present.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Review Release Notes	Review Policy Management 9.x software Upgrade Release Notes for the target release for the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Individual Software components and versions included in target release• Issues (Oracle PRs) resolved in target release• Known Issues with target release• Any further instructions that may be required to complete the Software Upgrade for the target release
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify all administration data needed during upgrade	Double-check that all information in Section 2.10.2 is filled-in and accurate.
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Contact Oracle Customer Care Center	Contact My Oracle Support and inform them of your plans to upgrade this system.
This procedure is completed		

3.2 PMAC Upgrade

Policy Release 9.x includes an upgrade to the Management Server (PMAC) for C-class installations to PMAC Rel 5.1. This version of PMAC provides support for HP GEN8 servers, and uses a TVOE virtual OS environment.

The PMAC version is a major upgrade, from release 3 to release 5.1, and includes changes to the look and feel of the GUI, better reliability and improved Software Inventory function. Functionality remains the similar to previous release, and changes are easy to learn.

This upgrade is backwards compatible to Policy 7.5 installations, and can be performed without any risk of network impacts.

NOTE: An additional Management IP Address is required for this PMAC installation.

See Appendix C for instructions to Upgrade PMAC.

3.3 Plan and Track Upgrades

The procedures in this document divide the Upgrade into 3 steps:

- Upgrade CMP clusters
- Upgrade MPE and MRA clusters, 1 site at a time
- Activate the 9.x Replication feature

The following Procedure must be completed before the Upgrade begins, to identify the Clusters to be upgraded and plan the work. It can also be used to track the completion of the upgrades, and assign work to different engineers.

The MPE Upgrades can be done in parallel.

NOTES:

- No Policy Changes or Configuration change may be made while the system is in mixed-mode.
- Time estimates are for upgrade activity without roll back. Roll back time is typically same or less than upgrade time.
- On C-class systems, the PMAC server must be upgraded before upgrading of the Policy application servers. There is a separate procedure for PMAC Upgrade.

3.3.1 Procedure 2: Plan and Track Cluster Upgrades

Step	Procedure	Result	Init	Time																								
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Use the following Checklist to plan the Cluster upgrades for the entire system.	Maintenance Windows are planned																										
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	PRIMARY Site CMP cluster Upgrade	Site Name _____		1 hr																								
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	SECONDARY- Site CMP cluster Upgrade	Site Name _____		30 min																								
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	MPE/MRA clusters Upgraded at Site 1	Site Name _____ Cluster List: <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Cluster Name</th><th>Hostname 1</th><th>Hostname 2</th><th>Completed?</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody></table>	Cluster Name	Hostname 1	Hostname 2	Completed?																						2 hrs
Cluster Name	Hostname 1	Hostname 2	Completed?																									
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	MPE/MRA clusters Upgraded at Site 2	Site Name _____ Cluster List: <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Cluster Name</th><th>Hostname 1</th><th>Hostname 2</th><th>Completed?</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody></table>	Cluster Name	Hostname 1	Hostname 2	Completed?																						2 hrs
Cluster Name	Hostname 1	Hostname 2	Completed?																									

Step	Procedure	Result	Init	Time																												
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	MPE/MRA clusters Upgraded Site 3	<p>Site Name _____</p> <p>Cluster List:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Cluster Name</th> <th>Hostname 1</th> <th>Hostname 2</th> <th>Completed?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Cluster Name	Hostname 1	Hostname 2	Completed?																										2 hrs
Cluster Name	Hostname 1	Hostname 2	Completed?																													
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	MPE/MRA clusters Upgraded Site 4	<p>Site Name _____</p> <p>Cluster List:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Cluster Name</th> <th>Hostname 1</th> <th>Hostname 2</th> <th>Completed?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Cluster Name	Hostname 1	Hostname 2	Completed?																										2 hrs
Cluster Name	Hostname 1	Hostname 2	Completed?																													

3.4 Perform System Health Check (Upgrade Preparation)

This procedure is part of Software Upgrade Preparation and is used to determine the health and status of the servers to be upgraded. This must be executed at least once within the time frame of 24 – 36 hours prior to the start of a maintenance window.

3.4.1 Procedure 3: Perform System Health Check (Upgrade Preparation)

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Login to Manager (CMP) GUI	
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	View Active Alarms	Identify the cause of any active alarms, and determine if these may have impact on the upgrade. Export current Alarms to file, and save.
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	View KPI Dashboard	Verify that the system is running within expected parameters. Export current KPIs to file, and save.
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Confirm TSB have been applied (as needed)	<p>Confirm that any needed Technical Service Bulletins (TSB) have been applied.</p> <p>Specifically: <i>Procedure to reset upsynclog configuration parameters back to designed values</i> must be applied.</p> <p>This TSB requires that a command is run on each server in the system to confirm that the configuration is set correctly. If it is not, a procedure must be applied (in a maintenance window) to set the correct configuration value.</p> <p>Verify Command (run on each server):</p> <pre>igt -p PartAttrDef where "partDefRecNum='UpSyncLog' and attr='KeepCount' "</pre> <p>Correct Result:</p> <pre>recNum partDefRecNum attr val 135 UpSyncLog KeepCount 0</pre> <p>See the TSB for the procedure to repair, if needed.</p> <p>NOTE: This TSB needs to be applied on CMP servers as well only after the all associated MPEs have been applied. When applying this on CMP servers, if there is an error like: schema has mismatched, this will need manual manipulation.</p>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	Fix for Missing file	<p>On 7.5 MPE/MRA servers, the following file may be missing, and this will (may) cause a Upgrade failure.</p> <pre>/opt/camiant/smsr/smscfg/log4j.properties</pre> <p>Check if this file exists before upgrade. If not:</p> <pre># touch /opt/camiant/smsr/smscfg/log4j.properties</pre> <p>NOTE: In the steps of upgrade, if upgrade has failed immediately, and the upgrade.log shows: Missing Files: camiant-comcol-schemata-xxx</p> <pre>/opt/TKLCcomcol/camiant/prod/maint/loaders/load.dbcfg. # touch /opt/TKLCcomcol/camiant/prod/maint/loaders/load.dbcfg</pre>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

3.5 Firmware Upgrades

Oracle notifies customers when critical Firmware upgrades are needed. However, other non-critical firmware updates are issued periodically and recommended.

In general, the upgrade of the Policy application does not depend on these firmware upgrades. However, it is strongly recommended deploy any recommended firmware upgrades. This is typically deployed before Policy Management 9.x upgrade.

Current Recommended HP Firmware delivery:

HP Service Pack for ProLiant 2.2.3 ISO	P/N: 875-1124-103	ISO: 872-2488-103-2.2.3-10.29.0.iso
HP Misc Firmware 2.2.2 ISO	P/N: 875-0903-213	ISO: 872-2161-115-2.2.2_10.28.0.iso
Upgrade Procedures Document	P/N: 909-2234-001 Rev A	
Release Notes	P/N: 910-6611-001 Rev A	

This Oracle HP Firmware rev includes Release notes that identify the latest firmware revs for each of the system components.

Firmware upgrade procedures are not included in this document.

NOTE: The firmware upgrade of the Enclosure switches causes a very brief traffic impact, as the switch boots (traffic will failover to the other switch during this activity).

3.6 Deliver Software to Sites

The following media should be shipped to site:

- New PMAC Software
 - PMAC TVOE 2.0 Installation DVD
 - PMAC 5.0 Application ISO (on DVD or USB key)
- Old PMAC Software (for backout)
 - PMAC TPD
 - PMAC 3.x Application ISO
- New Firmware:
 - HP Smart Update Firmware 2.2.3 (on BOTH DVD and USB key)
 - Oracle Misc Firmware Update ISO (on USB key)
- Old Firmware (for backout)
 - HP Smart Update Firmware x.x.x (on BOTH DVD and USB key)
 - Oracle Misc Firmware Update ISO (on USB key)

A local support person must be available to insert the media in the systems, as needed.

Both 9.x and 7.5 Policy Applications will need to be available at the site.

It is assumed that these ISO files can be transferred to PMAC or another on-site server using file transfer, so they are available for upgrade or recovery activities at the site.

(This may take as much as 1 day, depending on the transfer rate.)

3.7 Deploy Software (Upgrade Preparation)

This procedure is intended for remote execution of the Upgrade.

Software should be deployed to each Policy server “upgrade” directory, before the actual upgrade activities. This will typically be done with scp, wget or ftp. Because of the large size of the software ISO files, sufficient time should be planned to accomplish this step.

It is recommended to copy the ISO images to a server at the site, and then re-distribute the ISO images to the other servers at the site. This allows faster transfer times, and allows the host names to be used during the transfer (which reduces the possibility of the wrong image being deployed to a server).

3.8 Deploying Upgrade Software to Servers

There are three Software Images in this upgrade (CMP, MRA or MPE/MPE-LI). A single image must be deployed to the Upgrade directory of each server to be upgraded, where the image is the correct type for that server. i.e. the New CMP software image must be deployed to the CMP servers, the new MRA image deployed to the MRA servers, and the MPE image deployed to the MPE servers.

IMPORTANT: *If the deployed image type (CMP, MRA, MPE) does not match the existing installed software type, the upgrade will fail. Example: an attempt to Upgrade a CMP with a MPE software image will fail during the Upgrade action.*

NOTE: To change a server from one application type to another, the server must first be cleaned of all application software by an “Install OS” action, and then the new Application type installed.]

3.8.1 Procedure 4: Copy ISO images to Management Servers (PMAC)

If the system has a Management Server (PMAC), then the following procedure must be applied for each PMAC server in the system.

IMPORTANT: *PMAC should be upgraded from 3.0 to 5.1 release prior to this step. See Appendix C.*

PMAC may be upgraded in advance of the Application upgrade. PMAC 5.0 can manage Policy 7.5 servers.

This procedure transfers software Upgrade ISO files to the PMAC, and loads the ISO files into the PMAC Software Image repository.

NOTES:

- ISO transfers to the target systems may require a significant amount of time depending on the number of systems and the speed of the network. The ISO transfers to the target systems should be performed prior to, outside of, the scheduled maintenance window. Schedule the required maintenance windows accordingly before proceeding.
- Because the ISO images are large, the procedure includes instructions to check space available in the /var/TKLC/upgrade directory before copying the ISO files to this directory. After the “Add Image” action on the PMAC, the ISO images are registered in PMAC, and stored in the /var/TKLC/smac/image/ directory which is very large. After this step, the added images can then be removed from the /var/TKLC/upgrade directory.

PRE-REQUISITE: PMAC is upgraded to 4.0 release.

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC GUI: login to pmac as pmacadmin	Open the PMAC GUI, select Software → Manage Software Images Determine what Images are installed, and confirm that new images are not yet installed.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	WinSCP to PMAC server, login as root	From workstation with ISO Images, open WinSCP (or similar tool), ad login as root.
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	WinSCP: Change Target Directory to /var/TKLC/upgrade	Change Target Directory to /var/TKLC/upgrade
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	WinSCP: Remove existing ISO files from /var/TKLC/upgrade	To keep this directory space free, remove any existing ISO files
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	WinSCP: Copy ISO image to PMAC	Copy a ISO image to PMAC /var/TKLC/upgrade directory

Step	Procedure	Result
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC GUI: Add Image	Software → Manage Software Images Click Add Image Select the ISO that was just copied to the PMAC server.
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC GUI: Verify Image is added	Software → Manage Software Images The just added image will show in this view after about 1 minute. NOTE: Added images are stored in /var/TKLC/smac/image
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat above steps for all images	Repeat above steps for all images <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TPD Software ISO for Policy • Policy CMP Iso • Policy MPE (or MPE-LI) Iso • Policy MRA Iso
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

3.8.2 Procedure 5: Copy ISO Images to Target Servers (PP5160, DL360, c-Class)

This procedure applies to all Server types. For c-Class installations, the previous procedure must also be executed. It is assumed that there is scp access to each server to be upgraded, and that the Application software images are available in a ISO format that can be copied to the servers.

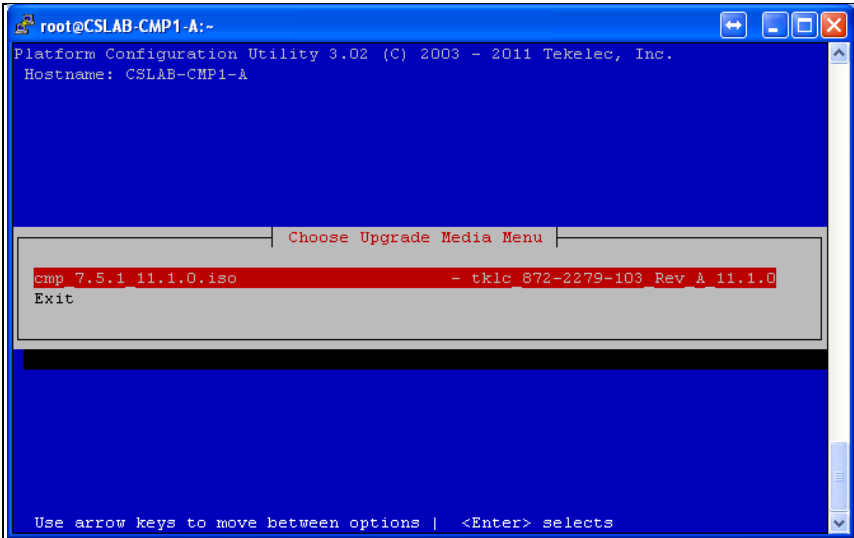
- For PP5160 or DL360, it is also possible to use the CD drive on the server to perform the upgrade, as an alternative to copying the ISO file to the server.
- For C-class servers, the PMAC server may be used to load the ISO files from the PMAC CD drive.

NOTE: ISO transfers to the target systems may require a significant amount of time depending on the number of systems and the speed of the network. The ISO transfers to the target systems should be performed prior to, outside of, the scheduled maintenance window. Schedule the required maintenance windows accordingly before proceeding.

The ISO images are put in the /var/TKLC/upgrade directory on each server. Because the ISO images are large, the following procedure includes instructions to check space available before copying the ISO to this directory. The Upgrade command, used later in the procedure, will look in this directory for available upgrades, and present a list to the user.

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Select Server at the upgrade site to use as Distribution point	This procedure will select a server at the site to copy the ISO images to, and then this server will be used to re-distribute ISO images to the other servers at the site. Distribution Server at site (CMP, MPE, MRA): Example: cmp_ip_address
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Ssh to Distribution Server:	1. Access the login prompt. 2. Log into the server as the root user on the iLO or RMM. <pre>login as: root password: <enter password></pre>

Step	Procedure	Result												
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify enough space exists for ISO	<div>1. Verify that there is at least 1G in the Avail column. If not, clean up files until there is space available.</div> <div>2. Make sure you know what files you can remove safely before cleaning up. It is recommended that you only clean up files in the <code>/var/TKLC/upgrade</code> directory as this is a platform owned directory that should only contain ISO images. This directory should not be expected to contain images for any length of time as they can get purged.</div> <div>Removing files other than those in directory <code>/var/TKLC/upgrade</code> is potentially dangerous.</div> <div>3. Cleanup un-needed ISO files in upgrade directory.</div> <div><pre># ls /var/TKLC/upgrade</pre></div> <div>If needed:</div> <div><pre># rm /var/TKLC/upgrade/*.iso</pre></div> <div>4. Check disk space available</div> <div><pre># df -h /var/TKLC</pre></div> <div><table><tr><th>Filesystem</th><th>Size</th><th>Used</th><th>Avail</th><th>Use%</th><th>Mounted on</th></tr><tr><td>/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_var_tklc</td><td>3.9G</td><td>174M</td><td>3.6G</td><td>5%</td><td>/var/TKLC</td></tr></table></div>	Filesystem	Size	Used	Avail	Use%	Mounted on	/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_var_tklc	3.9G	174M	3.6G	5%	/var/TKLC
Filesystem	Size	Used	Avail	Use%	Mounted on									
/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_var_tklc	3.9G	174M	3.6G	5%	/var/TKLC									
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Copy a Policy Management 9.x software ISO image file from the local workstation to the target server upgrade directory. Image will be one of: CMP, MRA or MPE.	<div>From the local workstation: (use WinSCP, or equivalent), copy the Policy Management 9.x software ISO to target server</div> <div><pre># scp <ISO Name> root@<server IP>:/var/TKLC/upgrade</pre></div> <div>Example for CMP ISO:</div> <div><pre># scp 872-2544-101-9.1.0_x.y.0-cmp-x86_64.iso root@xx.xx.xx.xx:/var/TKLC/upgrade</pre></div>												
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify ISO image file is copied to correct location. Examine output of the command and verify that the ISO file is present and that file size appears correct.	<div>From the Distribution server:</div> <div><pre># ls -l /var/TKLC/upgrade-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 863408128 Jul 24 14:27 872-2544-101-9.1.0_x.y.0-cmp-x86_64.iso</pre></div>												

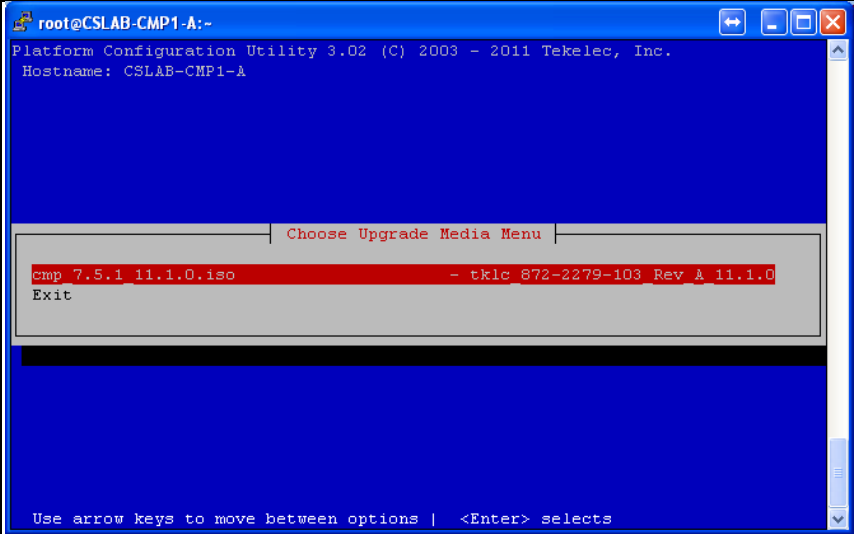
Step	Procedure	Result
6	<div> <input type="checkbox"/> </div> Validate the Policy Management 9.x software ISO Rel 9.x Application Part Numbers: CMP – 872-2544-101 MPE – 872-2545-101 MPE-LI – 872-2546-101 MRA – 872-2547-101	<pre># su - platcfg</pre> <p>Maintenance → Upgrade → Validate Media</p>  <p>NOTE: The ISO file type may not be shown in the ISO name, as in the example above. In this case, the following part numbers identify the applications types for Rel 9.x:</p> <p>Select the Iso file to validate, and enter</p> <p>Expected Result:</p> <pre>... UMVT Validate Utility v2.2.1, (c)Oracle, June 2010 Validating /var/TKLC/upgrade/cmp_9.x_18.2.0.iso Date&Time: 2011-11-01 09:24:39 Volume ID: tklc_872-2544-101_Rev_A_18.2.0 Part Number: 872-2544-101 Version: 18.2.0 Disc Label: cmp Disc description: cmp The media validation is complete, the result is: PASS CDROM is Valid</pre> <p>Note: Do not continue if ISO image validation reports any errors or is invalid. Instead remove the ISO file and either re-copy it to the target system or regenerate it from physical media.</p>

Step	Procedure	Result
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Re-Distribute ISO to other servers of this type at the site</p> <p>This step will depend on the ISO type.</p>	<p>From the Distribution server:</p> <pre># cat /etc/hosts grep <cmp, mpe, mra></pre> <p>Example :</p> <pre>[root@slak-cmp-a upgrade]# cat /etc/hosts grep cmp 10.250.85.25 slak-cmp-a 10.250.84.25 brbg-cmp-a 10.250.84.26 brbg-cmp-b 10.250.85.25 slak-cmp-a 10.250.85.26 slak-cmp-b</pre> <p>For the servers of the type for this ISO:</p> <pre># ssh <hostname> # ls -l /var/TKLC/upgrade</pre> <p>Make sure this directory is empty. If not, remove any existing ISO files</p> <pre># exit</pre> <p>Copy software to CMPs:</p> <pre># scp 872-2544* <cmp_hostname>:/var/TKLC/upgrade</pre> <p>Copy software to MPEs:</p> <pre># scp 872-2545* (or 872-2546*) <mpe_hostname>:/var/TKLC/upgrade</pre> <p>Copy software to MRAs:</p> <pre># scp 872-2547* <mra_hostname>:/var/TKLC/upgrade</pre>
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Remove ISO from Distribution server (if it is not needed for this server)</p>	<p>If the ISO file is not needed at the Distribution server, delete it.</p> <p>[Example: Distribution server is CMP, and ISO is MPE.]</p> <p>From the Distribution server:</p> <pre># ls /var/TKLC/upgrade</pre> <p>Remove CMP ISO from non-CMP distribution server:</p> <pre># rm /var/TKLC/upgrade/872-2544*</pre> <p>Remove MPE ISO from non-MPE distribution server:</p> <pre># rm /var/TKLC/upgrade /872-2545* (or 872-2546*)</pre> <p>Remove MRA ISO from non-MRA distribution server:</p> <pre># rm /var/TKLC/upgrade /872-2547*</pre>
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Repeat steps 4 – 9 for each server type (CMP, MPE, MRA) at the upgrade site.</p>	<p>Steps 4 – 9 must be repeated for each server type at the target site to be upgraded.</p>
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>This procedure needs to be repeated for each site to be upgraded.</p>	<p>This procedure needs to be repeated for each site to be upgraded.</p>
Procedure is completed		

3.8.3 Procedure 6: Verify CMP Software Images

Detailed steps are shown in the procedure below to verify that the image files are correctly deployed and ready for upgrade activity on the CMPs. (A similar step will be done later for the upgrade of the MPE/MRA servers.)

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP Log into the server as the root user	login: root Password: <root_password>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify Image is deployed at Primary CMP cluster Rel 9.x Application Part Numbers: CMP – 872-2544-101 MPE – 872-2545-101 MPE-LI – 872-2546-101 MRA – 872-2547-101	Verify that the correct software ISO is loaded on the server. IMPORTANT: If the ISO file is the wrong type (example: CMP ISO loaded on a current MRA configured server), the upgrade step for this server will fail and the server will need to be re-installed from the Install OS step. # getPolicyRev 7.5.x_x.x.x # getPolicyRev -p cmp # ls -l /var/TKLC/upgrade total 706236 -rw-r--r-- 1 root root 863408128 Jul 3 03:04 cmp--9.x.0_18.2.0--872-2544-101--x86_64.iso Verify that the ISO matches the correct part number for this server function (CMP), and Verify there is only one ISO in this directory.

Step	Procedure	Result
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Validate ISO image	<p>This step will validate the ISO image:</p> <pre># su - platcfg</pre> <p>Maintenance → Upgrade → Validate Media</p>  <p>Choose ISO to validate, and enter</p> <p>Expected Result:</p> <pre>UMVT Validate Utility v2.2.1, (c)Oracle, June 2010 Validating /var/TKLC/upgrade/cmp_9.x.0_18.2.0.iso Date&Time: 2011-11-01 09:24:39 Volume ID: tklc_872-2544-101_Rev_A_18.2.0 Part Number: 872-2544-101 Version: 18.2.0 Disc Label: cmp Disc description: cmp The media validation is complete, the result is: PASS</pre> <p>CDROM is Valid</p> <p>Note: Do not continue if ISO image validation reports any errors or is invalid. Instead remove the ISO file and either re-copy it to the target system or regenerate it from physical medi</p> <pre># exit</pre>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	If ISO image is not found, or not valid	If ISO image is not found, or not valid, re-deploy the correct ISO image.
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat steps 2-4 for each of the remaining CMP servers in the network.	<p>Primary Standby CMP _____</p> <p>Secondary Active CMP _____</p> <p>Secondary Standby CMP _____</p>

Step	Procedure	Result
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP Verify SSH Key Exchange for CMP cluster	<pre># ssh <Primary Standby CMP></pre> Confirm that there is no password prompt. If needed, perform ssh Key Exchange: <pre># su - platcfg</pre> Camiant Configuration → Exchange SSH keys OK
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Secondary Active CMP Verify SSH Key Exchange for CMP cluster	<pre># ssh <Secondary Standby CMP></pre> Confirm that there is no password prompt. If needed, perform ssh Key Exchange: <pre># su - platcfg</pre> Camiant Configuration → Exchange SSH keys OK
Procedure is completed		

3.9 Verify Network Firewall Connectivity

Verify that the additional firewall connectivity needed for Rel 9.x is implemented in the network.

Specifically:

- See detail from Policy Management 9.x Network Architecture Planning Document (NAPD) (see References)

3.10 Backups for Servers and the System

IMPORTANT: Backups for servers, and the system, must be collected and readily accessible for recovery operations.

Consider doing this before each major activity.

Nightly Backup collection should normally be automated for a customer deployment, so identify the location and access method for these backups. If needed, perform manual backups.

3.10.1 Procedure 7: Backups (System and Server) Location and Access

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify Backups Location	Backup location is: <hr/> Instructions to access to backups are as follows: <hr/> <hr/> <hr/>
Procedure is completed		

3.11 Collect Ddata Exports from the System

The Policy system supports Export of key configuration data, such as:

- Policies
- Network Elements
- Quotas

VIIdentify what data should be exported, and verify that a recent export of this data is saved to a off-line system.

This may be important for post system upgrade activities.

4. SOFTWARE UPGRADE CAUTIONS

Before upgrade, users must perform the system health check section. This check ensures that the system to be upgraded is in an upgrade-ready state. Performing the system health check determines which alarms are present in the system and if upgrade can proceed with alarms.

****** WARNING ******

If the server being upgraded is not in a Normal state, the server should be brought to the Normal state before the upgrade process is started. [Normal state is generally determined by lack of alarms.]

****** WARNING ******

Please read the following notes on upgrade procedures:

Where possible, command response outputs are shown as accurately as possible. EXCEPTIONS are as follows:

- Session banner information such as *time* and *date*.
- System-specific configuration information such as *hardware locations*, *IP addresses*, and *hostnames*.
- ANY information marked with "XXXX" or "YYYY." Where appropriate, instructions are provided to determine what output should be expected in place of "XXXX or YYYY"
- Aesthetic differences unrelated to functionality such as browser attributes: *window size*, *colors*, *toolbars*, and *button layouts*.

After completing each step and at each point where data is recorded from the screen, the technician performing the upgrade must initial each step. A check box should be provided. For procedures which are executed multiple times, the check box can be skipped, but the technician must initial each iteration the step is executed. The space on either side of the step number can be used (margin on left side or column on right side).

Captured data is required for future support reference if Oracle Technical Services is not present during the upgrade. Any CLI level windows should be logged.

5. UPGRADE CMP CLUSTERS

This procedure will upgrade the Primary site CMP cluster, and then upgrade the optional Secondary site CMP cluster, in a single maintenance window.

NOTES:

- Once the first CMP at the Active site is upgraded and made active, the other CMPs will report an alarm condition to indicate that they are not able to sync to the Active CMP. As the other CMPs are upgraded, they will re-sync.
- The Upgraded CMPs can perform basic monitoring of the 7.5.x MRAs/MPEs, to allow the migration of these elements to be spaced over several maintenance windows. However, configuration changes must not be performed for these elements.
- New Policies should not be introduced/deployed during the period when the Policy elements are being upgraded. Once all elements are on the new release, Policy activities can resume.
- Rollback option is supported at each step of the upgrade

5.1 Upgrade Active Site CMP Cluster

This procedure should be executed inside of a Maintenance window.

It is assumed that the CMPs may be deployed as 2 geo-redundant clusters, identified as Primary (active) Site and Secondary (non-active) Site. [However, a geo-redundant CMP configuration is not required.]

This section will upgrade the Primary site CMP Cluster, and the next section will upgrade the Secondary Site CMP Cluster. Both may be completed in a single Maintenance window.

Identify the CMPs Sites to be upgraded here, and verify which site is Primary and Secondary:

CMP Site Geo Status	Operator Site Name	Site Designation from Topology Form (aka; Site 1 or Site 2)
Primary Site		
Secondary Site		

Note the Information on this CMP cluster:

Cluster Name _____

Server-A Hostname _____

Server-A IP _____

Server-A Status _____

Server-B Hostname _____

Server-B IP _____

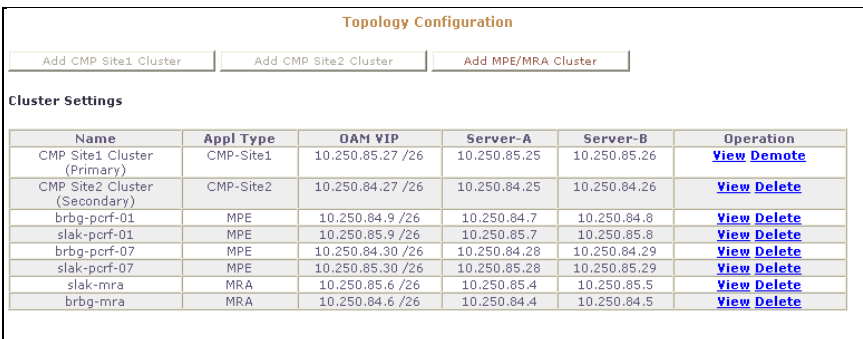
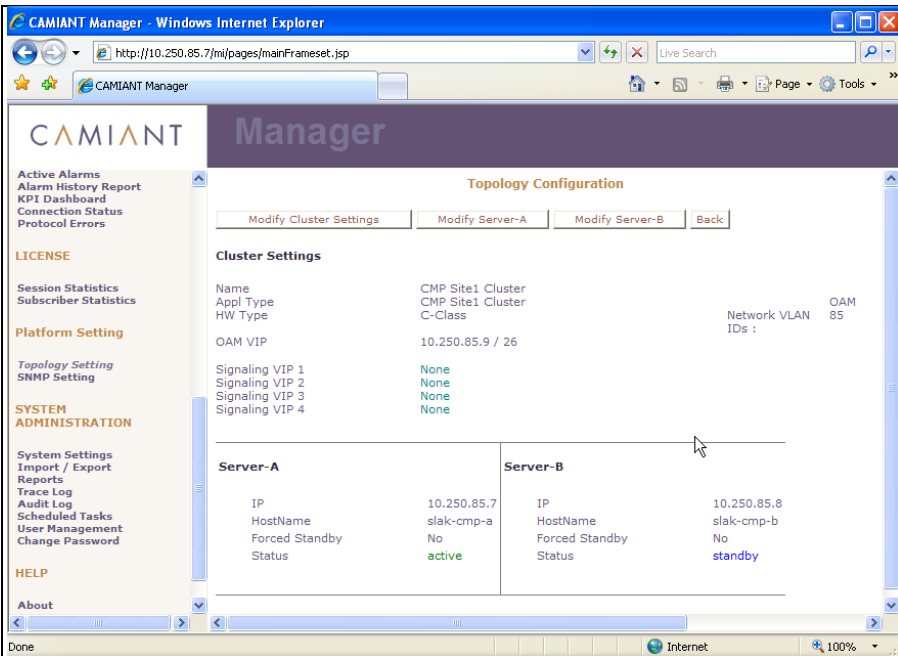
Server-B Status _____

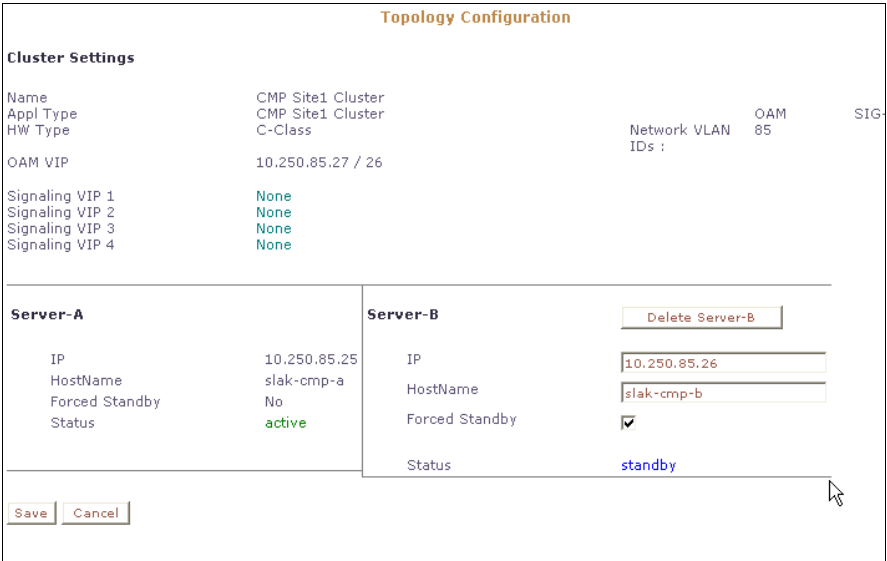
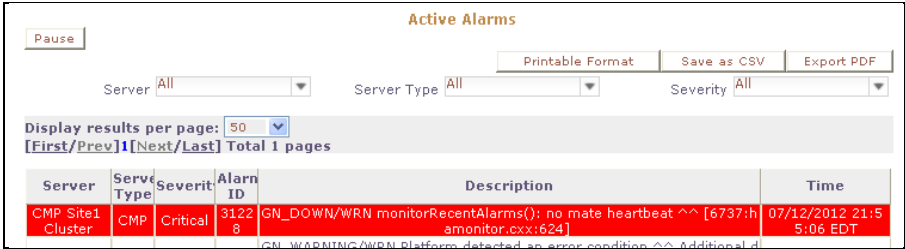
IMPORTANT: CMP servers MUST be upgraded before the MRA or MPE servers.

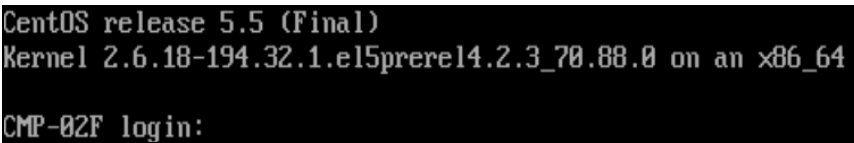
5.1.1 Procedure 8: Upgrade Standby server at Primary CMP Site

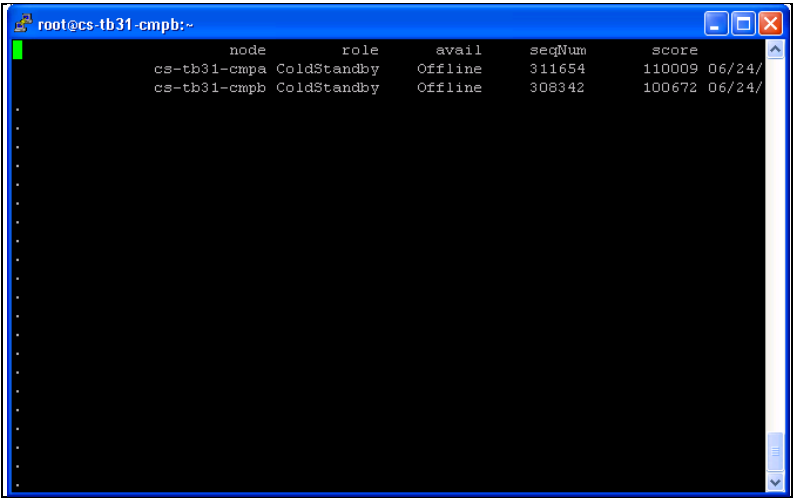
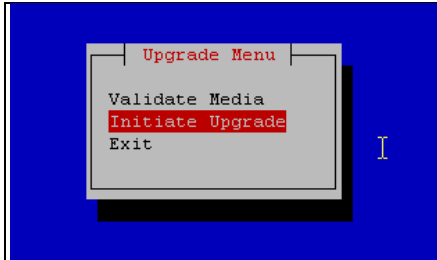
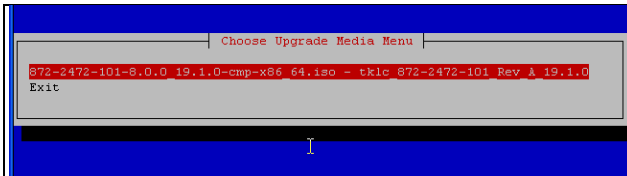
Pre-requisites:

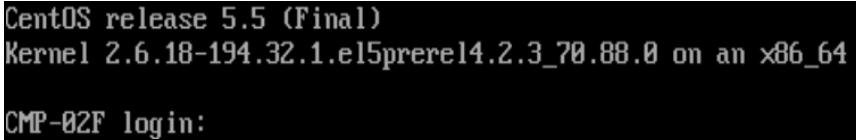
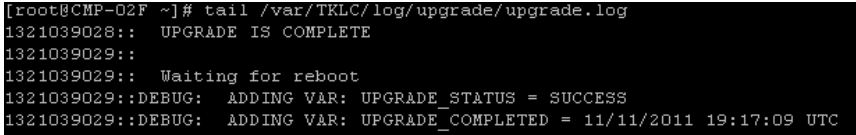
- Procedure 6 is completed – which copies the newest policyUpgrade.pl script onto the Primary Active CMP server

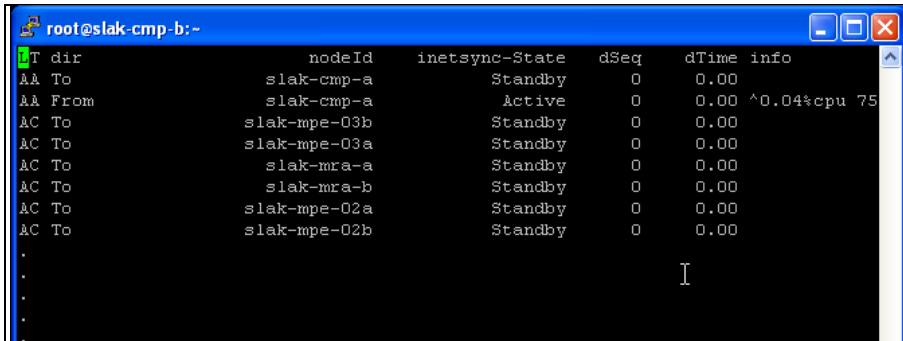
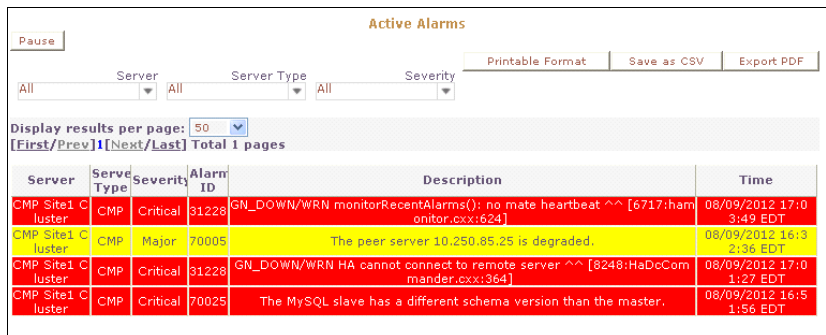
Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Identify the CMP Cluster to be Upgraded	<p>From CMP Manager:</p> <p>Platform Setting → Topology Setting</p>  <p>Select the (Primary) CMP Cluster to be Upgraded and View Status (Primary CMP Site):</p> 
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Identify the first server in cluster to be Upgraded	<p>Record the CMP Server with Status standby that will be upgraded first.</p> <p>Server to Upgrade First _____</p>

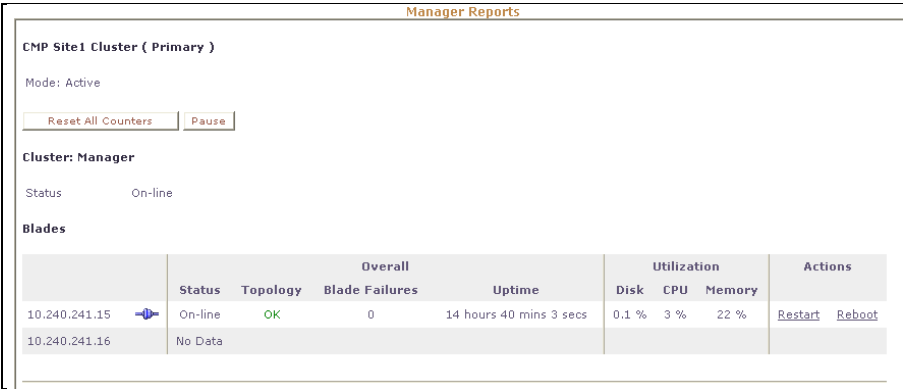
Step	Procedure	Result
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Make Standby server Forced Standby	<p>From Manager GUI, Topology view, select Modify for the current Standby CMP server</p> <p>Topology → CMP Primary Site Cluster View → Modify Server –A or –B</p> <p>Set the Forced Standby checkbox on Standby Server</p> <p>Save the form.</p>  <p>An Alarm will occur to indicate that the Active CMP server has lost sync with the Standby CMP Server. (this may take a minute to appear in the Active Alarms list)</p> 
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Login to Primary Active CMP server via ssh	<pre>CentOS release 4.6 (Final) Kernel 2.6.18-1.2849prere13.3.0_63.1.0 on an i686 localhost login: root Password: <root_password> Verify that this is the Active CMP: # ha.stat</pre>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP Extract Upgrade script from CMP ISO	<pre># cd /var/TKLC/upgrade # ls 872-2544-101-9.x.0_24.2.0-cmp-x86_64.iso # mount -o loop /var/TKLC/upgrade/872-2544* /mnt/upgrade # cp /mnt/upgrade/upgrade/policyScripts/policyUpgrade.pl /opt/camiant/bin # umount /mnt/upgrade</pre>

Step	Procedure	Result
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP: Prepare Servers for Upgrade. Disable replication for certain data tables.	<p>Execute command to Disable Replication for certain data tables.</p> <pre># iqt -p NodeInfo nodeId nodeName hostName inhibitFlag nodeCap excludeTables A3411.121 slak-cmp-b slak-cmp-b,10.250.85.26 MasterCapable A3411.190 slak-cmp-a slak-cmp-a,10.250.85.25 H MasterCapable C1428.038 slak-mpe-07a slak-mpe-07a,10.250.85.28 MasterCapable C1428.073 slak-mpe-07b slak-mpe-07b,10.250.85.29 MasterCapable C3265.167 slak-mra-b slak-mra-b,10.250.85.5 MasterCapable C3265.212 slak-mra-a slak-mra-a,10.250.85.4 MasterCapable C3573.020 slak-mpe-01a slak-mpe-01a,10.250.85.7 MasterCapable C3573.027 slak-mpe-01b slak-mpe-01b,10.250.85.8 MasterCapable # policyUpgrade.pl --prepareUpgrade</pre> <p>Verify that file is updated with excludeTables "LongParam,AppEventDef"</p> <pre># iqt -p NodeInfo nodeId nodeName hostName inhibitFlag nodeCap excludeTables A3411.121 slak-cmp-b slak-cmp-b,10.250.85.26 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef A3411.190 slak-cmp-a slak-cmp-a,10.250.85.25 H MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C1428.038 slak-mpe-07a slak-mpe-07a,10.250.85.28 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C1428.073 slak-mpe-07b slak-mpe-07b,10.250.85.29 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3265.167 slak-mra-b slak-mra-b,10.250.85.5 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3265.212 slak-mra-a slak-mra-a,10.250.85.4 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3573.020 slak-mpe-01a slak-mpe-01a,10.250.85.7 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3573.027 slak-mpe-01b slak-mpe-01b,10.250.85.8 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef</pre> <p>NOTE: This change is automatically replicated to all 7.5.x servers from the Active CMP, and notifies the servers not to process any further updates to these tables. This step is needed since the upgraded CMPs (8.0) may send table updates to the 7.5.x servers that they will not be able to process correctly.</p> <p>NOTE: This Minor Alarm may be expected from servers</p> <p>31101 - GN_WARNING/WRN configuration change forcing re-init [SyncMaster.cxx:587], but will clear itself very quickly.</p>
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Login to CMP Force Standby server Either: 5. SSH - Access the login prompt. 6. Log into the server as the root user on the iLO or RMM, and access Remote Console	

Step	Procedure	Result
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Verify ha status at Standby CMP	<pre># ha.stat</pre>  <pre> node role avail seqNum score cs-tb31-cmpa ColdStandby Offline 311654 110009 06/24/ cs-tb31-cmpb ColdStandby Offline 308342 100672 06/24/ </pre> <p>Result will show “ColdStandby” and “Offline”.</p>
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Verify Application is running	<pre># service qp_procmgr status</pre> <pre>qp_procmgr (pid 13410) is running...</pre>
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Apply Upgrade at Primary Standby CMP NOTE: the Application is NOT shutdown prior to the upgrade. This will take approximately 20 minutes	<p>If using ssh, run the <code>screen</code> command to prevent hang-ups, and do not exit this screen session until the server reboots.</p> <pre># screen</pre> <p>Open platcfg.</p> <pre># su - platcfg</pre> <p>Select Maintenance → Upgrade → Initiate Upgrade</p>   <p>Monitor the ssh window output for the first few minutes, in case the upgrade fails during it's pre-upgrade checks.</p> <p>NOTE: If upgrade fails due to the missing files, follow the workaround below (following errors will be logged in upgrade.log):</p> <pre>1369689305:: Checking for any missing packages or files 1369689305:: Checking for missing files... 1369689306::Missing Files: 1369689308:: 0:TKLCsavelogsplat-4.1.17-4.2.3_70.84.0:</pre>

Step	Procedure	Result
		<p>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/savelogs_plat.d/rpms</p> <p>1369689308::</p> <p>1369689308::ERROR: There are files missing from some rpms!</p> <p>1369689308::ERROR: Will not upgrade the server!</p> <p>1369689308:: Restarting cron service...</p> <p>Work Around</p> <p>Copy the rpms file from /tmp to the /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/savelogs_plat.d/ directory.</p> <p>After this, output will then show that software packages are being upgraded. This will take 15 - 20 minutes.</p> <p>The SSH session will close as the server re-boots. Re-boot will take several minutes.</p> <p>Manager GUI Activity</p> <p>There will be a Major alarm 70005 for CMP cluster.</p> <p>Also multiple Minor Database replication Alarms: 31101, 31102, 31106, 31107, 31114.</p> <p>KPI Dashboard, and PCRF and MRA reports will show that traffic is proceeding as normal.</p>
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>SSH/Console/iLo: Login again to upgraded server.</p> <p>If login using the Console or Remote Console, verify that server returns to the login prompt after boot.</p>	
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>SSH/Console/iLo: Verify software versions</p>	<pre># getPlatRev 5.0.1-72.45.0 # getPolicyRev 9.x.0_x.x.x</pre>
13 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>SSH/Console/iLo: Verify success of Upgrade</p>	<pre># tail /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <p>The following indicates SUCCESS of Upgrade.</p>  <p>IF UPGRADE_STATUS is not equal to SUCCESS, then collect upgrade.log for analysis.</p> <p>See step 18.</p>

Step	Procedure	Result																				
14 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Verify Status of server processes (Server is still Forced Standby)	<pre># ha.mystate</pre> <table><thead><tr><th>resourceId</th><th>role</th><th>node</th><th>lastUpdate</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>DbReplication</td><td>Stby</td><td>A3411.190</td><td>0809:165127.110</td></tr><tr><td>VIP</td><td>Stby</td><td>A3411.190</td><td>0809:165127.123</td></tr><tr><td>QP</td><td>Stby</td><td>A3411.190</td><td>0809:165148.757</td></tr><tr><td>DbReplication_old</td><td>Stby</td><td>A3411.190</td><td>0809:165127.112</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>NOTE: It may take a few minutes (after the system has re-booted) for all the processes to reach the Stby state. They may initially be shown as OOS.</p>	resourceId	role	node	lastUpdate	DbReplication	Stby	A3411.190	0809:165127.110	VIP	Stby	A3411.190	0809:165127.123	QP	Stby	A3411.190	0809:165148.757	DbReplication_old	Stby	A3411.190	0809:165127.112
resourceId	role	node	lastUpdate																			
DbReplication	Stby	A3411.190	0809:165127.110																			
VIP	Stby	A3411.190	0809:165127.123																			
QP	Stby	A3411.190	0809:165148.757																			
DbReplication_old	Stby	A3411.190	0809:165127.112																			
15 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Verify replication is fully ready	<pre># inetstat</pre>  <p>All servers should show Active or Standby. If the status is “Audit”, wait for the audit to complete.</p>																				
16 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP Verify HA status	In SSH session with Primary Active CMP server, verify upgraded server is ColdStandby. <pre># ha.stat</pre> <table><thead><tr><th>node</th><th>role</th><th>avail</th><th>seqNum</th><th>score</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>cs-tb31-cmpa</td><td>ProvideSvc</td><td>Available</td><td>146282</td><td>146282</td></tr><tr><td>cs-tb31-cmpb</td><td>ColdStandby</td><td>Offline</td><td>144723</td><td>100687</td></tr></tbody></table>	node	role	avail	seqNum	score	cs-tb31-cmpa	ProvideSvc	Available	146282	146282	cs-tb31-cmpb	ColdStandby	Offline	144723	100687					
node	role	avail	seqNum	score																		
cs-tb31-cmpa	ProvideSvc	Available	146282	146282																		
cs-tb31-cmpb	ColdStandby	Offline	144723	100687																		
17 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Upgraded Standby Server status from CMP Manager Topology Form	From CMP Manager: Topology → <CMP Cluster (Primary)> → View Upgraded CMP should be in Standby (Force Standby = yes)																				
18 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Alarms	From CMP Manager: System Wide Reports → Active Alarms: Below is an example of alarms that may be seen. NOTE: It is recommended to sort this view by Severity, to see the most important alarms at the top of the form. 																				

Step	Procedure	Result
19 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify System Admin → Reports	Upgraded CMP status shows No Data . 
20 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify System Wide Reports – KPI Dashboard	System Wide Reports → KPI Dashboard Verify that report shows all normal traffic processing for the MPEs/MRAs.
21 <input type="checkbox"/>	IF UPGRADE Failure – ROLL BACK	If any of the Verifications above fail, then Roll Back the Upgrade. Refer to procedure for Roll back of a Partial Upgrade cluster
22 <input type="checkbox"/>	Proceed to next Procedure	If Verifications are successful, then one-half of the CMP Primary cluster is now upgraded but the 9.x server not available for service (Forced Standby). Proceed to the next Procedure to complete the CMP Cluster Upgrade.
Procedure is completed		

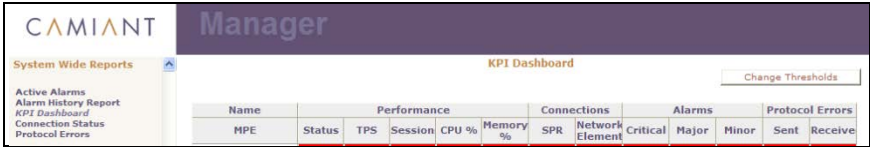
5.1.2 Procedure 9: Make Upgraded Server Active

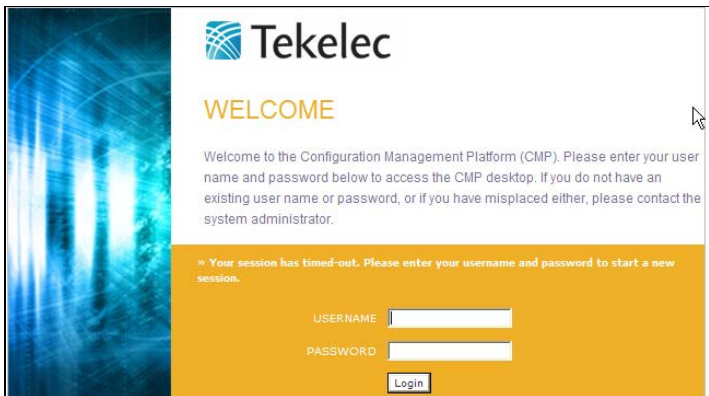
In this step, the upgraded server will be made to the Active server. The other server in the cluster will be made Forced Standby until it can be upgraded.

IMPORTANT: This step should not be service affecting, but it is recommended to perform this in a Maintenance Window as a precaution.

Pre-requisites:

- Procedure 6 was completed – which copies the newest policyUpgrade.pl script onto the Primary Active CMP server

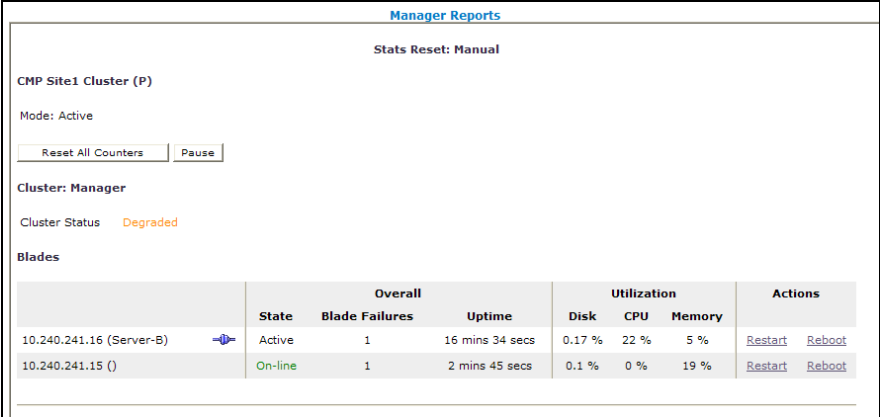
Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Status of Cluster to be Upgraded	From CMP Manager: Topology Setting → View Primary CMP Cluster One Primary Site CMP server will be Active, and the other (Force) Standby
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: View KPI Dashboard, and make a snapshot	From CMP Manager: System Wide Reports → KPI Dashboard Confirm current status is OK. Take a screen shot. 
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Login to the Primary Active CMP Server	Ssh to the current Primary Active CMP Server _____

Step	Procedure	Result																									
4	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> SSH: Primary Active CMP - Verify Server is Active	<div><pre># ha.stat</pre><table><thead><tr><th>node</th><th>role</th><th>avail</th><th>seqNum</th><th>score</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>cs-tb31-cmpa</td><td>ProvideSvc</td><td>Available</td><td>146282</td><td>146282</td></tr><tr><td>cs-tb31-cmpb</td><td>ColdStandby</td><td>Offline</td><td>144723</td><td>100687</td></tr></tbody></table><pre>Ctrl-c</pre></div>	node	role	avail	seqNum	score	cs-tb31-cmpa	ProvideSvc	Available	146282	146282	cs-tb31-cmpb	ColdStandby	Offline	144723	100687										
node	role	avail	seqNum	score																							
cs-tb31-cmpa	ProvideSvc	Available	146282	146282																							
cs-tb31-cmpb	ColdStandby	Offline	144723	100687																							
5	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> SSH: Primary Active CMP - Invoke failover of CMP cluster	<div><p>NOTE: This step will cause the 9.x CMP to become Active, and the 7.5.x server to become Force Standby</p><pre># policyUpgrade.pl --failover <CMP_Hostname></pre><p><CMP_Hostname> is current Active CMP hostname</p><p>NOTE: Any ssh sessions to the current CMP VIP address will close when the switchover occurs, and will need to be re-opened.</p></div>																									
6	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> SSH: Login to the New Primary Active CMP Server	Ssh to the New (9.x) Primary Active CMP Server _____																									
7	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> SSH: Verify New Primary Active CMP Server is Active, and all resources are Active	<div><pre># ha.mystate</pre><table><thead><tr><th>resourceId</th><th>role</th><th>node</th><th>subResou</th><th>lastUpdate</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>DbReplication</td><td>Active</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224121.532</td></tr><tr><td>VIP</td><td>Active</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224120.872</td></tr><tr><td>QP</td><td>Active</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224418.295</td></tr><tr><td>DbReplication_old</td><td>Active</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224120.815</td></tr></tbody></table></div>	resourceId	role	node	subResou	lastUpdate	DbReplication	Active	A2635.240	0	0612:224121.532	VIP	Active	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.872	QP	Active	A2635.240	0	0612:224418.295	DbReplication_old	Active	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.815
resourceId	role	node	subResou	lastUpdate																							
DbReplication	Active	A2635.240	0	0612:224121.532																							
VIP	Active	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.872																							
QP	Active	A2635.240	0	0612:224418.295																							
DbReplication_old	Active	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.815																							
8	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> GUI: Verify access to 9.x CMP Manager GUI	<div><p>Close CMP GUI Browser window, and re-open</p><p>Access CMP Manager GUI using the VIP address</p><p>Policy Management 9.x Manager login form should be visible.</p><p>Login credentials are the same as pre-upgrade.</p><div></div></div>																									

Step	Procedure	Result																																
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: View KPI Dashboard	<p>From CMP Manager:</p> <p>SystemWideReports → KPI Dashboard</p> <p>Make a snapshot. Compare to prior KPI Dashboard. Verify that service is normal.</p> <div><div><div><div><div></div><div>Policy Management</div></div><div><div>SYSTEM WIDE REPORTS</div><div><div>Active Alarms</div><div>Alarm History Report</div><div>KPI Dashboard</div><div>Trending Reports</div><div>Connection Status</div><div>Protocol Errors</div><div>Policy Statistics Report</div></div><div>PLATFORM SETTING</div></div><div><div><div>Show All Isolated MPEs</div><div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></div></div><div><div>Change Thresholds</div><div></div></div></div><div><table><tr><th>All Isolated MPEs</th><th colspan="5">Performance</th><th colspan="2">Connections</th><th colspan="3">Alarms</th><th colspan="2">Protocol Errors</th></tr><tr><th>MPE</th><th>State</th><th>TPS</th><th>PDN</th><th>CPU %</th><th>Memory %</th><th>MRA</th><th>HSS</th><th>Critical</th><th>Major</th><th>Minor</th><th>Sent</th><th>Received</th></tr></table></div></div></div></div>	All Isolated MPEs	Performance					Connections		Alarms			Protocol Errors		MPE	State	TPS	PDN	CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received						
All Isolated MPEs	Performance					Connections		Alarms			Protocol Errors																							
MPE	State	TPS	PDN	CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received																						
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Active Alarms	<p>Open the Active Alarms view.</p> <p>Wait a few minutes for alarms to clear.</p> <p>Certain Alarms are expected:</p> <p>Specifically, the following Critical Alarms are expected from the Active CMP:</p> <p>Active Alarms (Stats Reset: Manual / Last Refresh :10/24/2012 19:00:41)</p> <div><div>Pause</div><div>Printable Format</div><div>Save as CSV</div><div>Export PDF</div><div>Columns</div><div>Filters</div></div> <div><div>Display results per page: 50</div><div>[First/Prev]1[Next/Last]</div><div>Total 1 pages</div></div> <table><tr><th>Server</th><th>Server Type</th><th>Severity</th><th>Alarm ID</th><th>Description</th><th>Time</th></tr><tr><td>cs-tb31-cmp-b.1 0.240.238.86</td><td>CMP</td><td>Critical</td><td>70025</td><td>The MySQL slave has a different schema version than the master.</td><td>10/24/2012 18:57:15 EDT</td></tr><tr><td>cs-tb31-cmp2-a.1 0.240.238.83</td><td>CMP</td><td>Critical</td><td>70025</td><td>The MySQL slave has a different schema version than the master.</td><td>10/24/2012 18:56:24 EDT</td></tr><tr><td>cs-tb31-cmp2-b.1 0.240.238.91</td><td>CMP</td><td>Critical</td><td>70025</td><td>The MySQL slave has a different schema version than the master.</td><td>10/24/2012 18:56:27 EDT</td></tr><tr><td>cs-tb31-cpm-a.1 0.240.238.79</td><td>CMP</td><td>Critical</td><td>31283</td><td>High availability server is offline</td><td>10/24/2012 18:59:26 EDT</td></tr></table> <p>These will clear as the other CMPs are upgraded.</p> <p>NOTE: On the Policy Management 9.x GUI, there is on-line help to get additional alarm information. Click on the alarm ID in the Active Alarm view to get the Alarm details.</p>	Server	Server Type	Severity	Alarm ID	Description	Time	cs-tb31-cmp-b.1 0.240.238.86	CMP	Critical	70025	The MySQL slave has a different schema version than the master.	10/24/2012 18:57:15 EDT	cs-tb31-cmp2-a.1 0.240.238.83	CMP	Critical	70025	The MySQL slave has a different schema version than the master.	10/24/2012 18:56:24 EDT	cs-tb31-cmp2-b.1 0.240.238.91	CMP	Critical	70025	The MySQL slave has a different schema version than the master.	10/24/2012 18:56:27 EDT	cs-tb31-cpm-a.1 0.240.238.79	CMP	Critical	31283	High availability server is offline	10/24/2012 18:59:26 EDT		
Server	Server Type	Severity	Alarm ID	Description	Time																													
cs-tb31-cmp-b.1 0.240.238.86	CMP	Critical	70025	The MySQL slave has a different schema version than the master.	10/24/2012 18:57:15 EDT																													
cs-tb31-cmp2-a.1 0.240.238.83	CMP	Critical	70025	The MySQL slave has a different schema version than the master.	10/24/2012 18:56:24 EDT																													
cs-tb31-cmp2-b.1 0.240.238.91	CMP	Critical	70025	The MySQL slave has a different schema version than the master.	10/24/2012 18:56:27 EDT																													
cs-tb31-cpm-a.1 0.240.238.79	CMP	Critical	31283	High availability server is offline	10/24/2012 18:59:26 EDT																													
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Individual MRA/MPE Reports (as desired)	<p>Open and review Reports for the MRAs/MPEs.</p> <p>The reports should show traffic behavior comparable to the pre-upgrade.</p> <p>NOTE: Policy Management 9.x Reports are organized differently. The user may need to click a details link to see the full report.</p> <div><div><div>Protocol Statistics</div><table><tr><th>Name</th><th>Connections</th><th>Total client messages in / out</th><th>Total messages timeout</th></tr><tr><td colspan="4">Diameter</td></tr><tr><td>Diameter AF Statistics</td><td>2</td><td>0 / 0</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Diameter PCEF Statistics</td><td>2</td><td>583 / 583</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Diameter BBERF Statistics</td><td>2</td><td>582 / 582</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Diameter TDF Statistics</td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Diameter Sh Statistics</td><td>3</td><td>0 / 0</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Diameter DRMA Statistics</td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td></tr></table></div></div>	Name	Connections	Total client messages in / out	Total messages timeout	Diameter				Diameter AF Statistics	2	0 / 0	0	Diameter PCEF Statistics	2	583 / 583	0	Diameter BBERF Statistics	2	582 / 582	0	Diameter TDF Statistics			0	Diameter Sh Statistics	3	0 / 0	0	Diameter DRMA Statistics			0
Name	Connections	Total client messages in / out	Total messages timeout																															
Diameter																																		
Diameter AF Statistics	2	0 / 0	0																															
Diameter PCEF Statistics	2	583 / 583	0																															
Diameter BBERF Statistics	2	582 / 582	0																															
Diameter TDF Statistics			0																															
Diameter Sh Statistics	3	0 / 0	0																															
Diameter DRMA Statistics			0																															

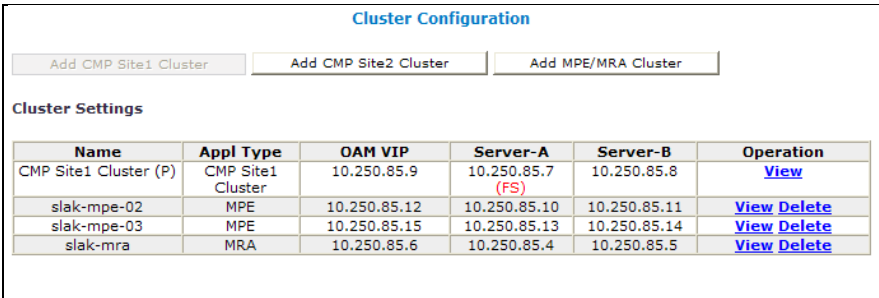
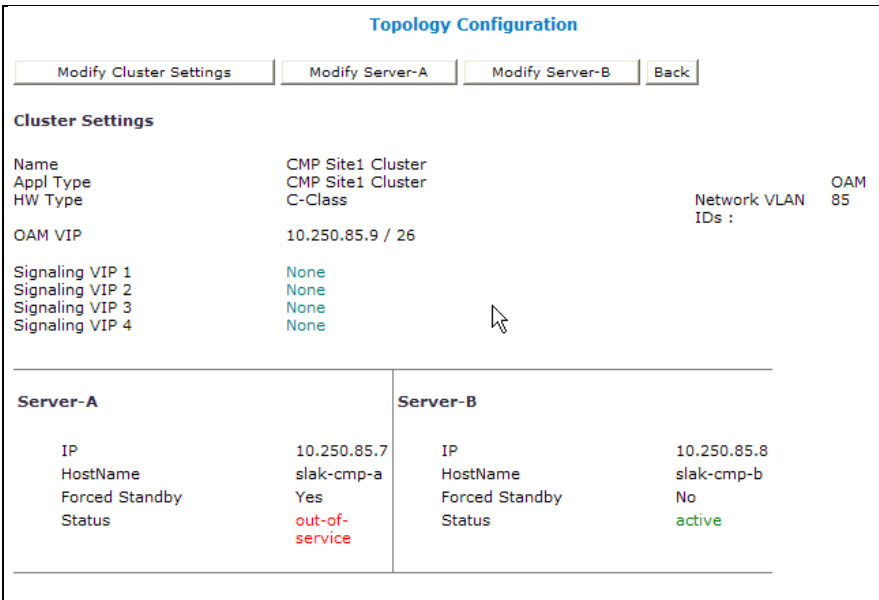
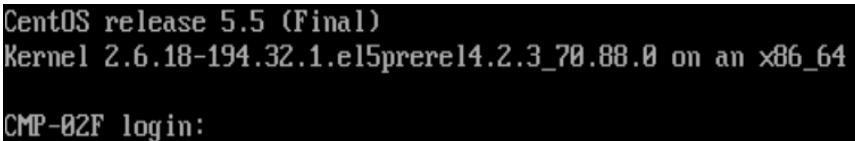
Step	Procedure	Result																		
		<div><div>Policy Server Administration</div><div>Policy Server: slak-pcrf-01</div><div><div>System</div><div>Reports</div><div>Logs</div><div>Policy Server</div><div>Diameter Routing</div><div>Policies</div><div>Data Sources</div><div>Sessi</div></div><div>Stats Reset: Manual</div><div>Diameter BBERF Statistics</div><div>Mode: Active / Absolute</div><div><div>Reset Counters</div><div>Show Deltas</div><div>Pause</div><div>Cancel</div></div><div><div>Connections</div><div>2</div></div><div><div>Currently okay peers</div><div>2</div></div><div><div>Currently down / suspect / reopened peers</div><div>0 / 0 / 0</div></div><div><div>Total messages in / out</div><div>582 / 582</div></div><div><div>CCR messages received / sent</div><div>582 / 0</div></div><div><div>CCR messages timeout</div><div></div></div><div><div>CCA success messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 582</div></div><div><div>CCA failure messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 0</div></div><div><div>CCR-I messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 0</div></div><div><div>CCR-I messages timeout</div><div></div></div><div><div>CCA-I success messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 0</div></div><div><div>CCA-I failure messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 0</div></div><div><div>CCR-U messages received / sent</div><div>292 / 0</div></div><div><div>CCR-U messages timeout</div><div></div></div><div><div>CCA-U success messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 292</div></div><div><div>CCA-U failure messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 0</div></div></div> <div><div>CCR-T messages received / sent</div><div>290 / 0</div></div> <div><div>CCR-T messages timeout</div><div></div></div> <div><div>CCA-T success messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 290</div></div> <div><div>CCA-T failure messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 0</div></div> <div><div>RAR messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 0</div></div> <div><div>RAR messages timeout</div><div></div></div> <div><div>RAA success messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 0</div></div> <div><div>RAA failure messages received / sent</div><div>0 / 0</div></div> <div><div>Currently active sessions</div><div>39710</div></div> <div><div>Max active sessions</div><div>40000</div></div> <div>Diameter BBERF connections</div> <table><thead><tr><th>ID</th><th>IP Address : Port</th><th>Currently active connections</th><th>Currently active sessions</th><th>Connect Time</th><th>Disconnect Time</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>brbg-mra.tekelec.com</td><td>10.250.84.145 : 43901</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Thu Jul 12 22:35:55 EDT 2012</td><td>N/A</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mra.tekelec.com</td><td>10.250.85.5 : 33111</td><td>1</td><td>39710</td><td>Thu Jul 12 22:35:57 EDT 2012</td><td>Thu Jul 12 22:35:56 EDT 2012</td></tr></tbody></table>	ID	IP Address : Port	Currently active connections	Currently active sessions	Connect Time	Disconnect Time	brbg-mra.tekelec.com	10.250.84.145 : 43901	1	0	Thu Jul 12 22:35:55 EDT 2012	N/A	slak-mra.tekelec.com	10.250.85.5 : 33111	1	39710	Thu Jul 12 22:35:57 EDT 2012	Thu Jul 12 22:35:56 EDT 2012
ID	IP Address : Port	Currently active connections	Currently active sessions	Connect Time	Disconnect Time															
brbg-mra.tekelec.com	10.250.84.145 : 43901	1	0	Thu Jul 12 22:35:55 EDT 2012	N/A															
slak-mra.tekelec.com	10.250.85.5 : 33111	1	39710	Thu Jul 12 22:35:57 EDT 2012	Thu Jul 12 22:35:56 EDT 2012															
12	<div><div></div><div>GUI: Verify System Administration → Reports</div></div>	<div>System Administration → Reports</div> <div>Report status will show with 9.x CMP Active</div>																		

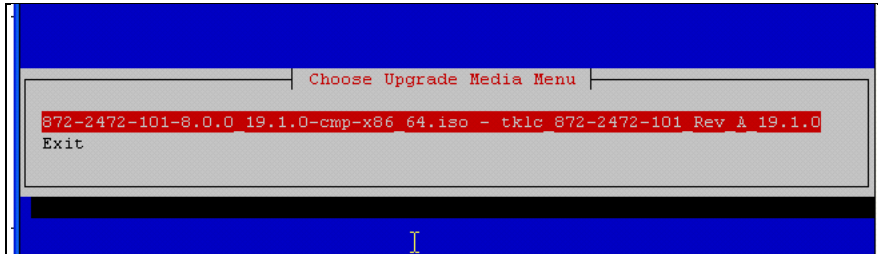
Step	Procedure	Result																																			
		<div><div>Manager Reports</div><div>Stats Reset: Manual</div><div>CMP Site1 Cluster (P)</div><div>Mode: Active</div><div><div>Reset All Counters</div><div>Pause</div></div><div>Cluster: Manager</div><div>Cluster Status Degraded</div><div>Blades</div><table><thead><tr><th></th><th></th><th colspan="2">Overall</th><th colspan="3">Utilization</th><th>Actions</th></tr><tr><th></th><th></th><th>State</th><th>Blade Failures</th><th>Uptime</th><th>Disk</th><th>CPU</th><th>Memory</th><th></th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>10.240.241.16 (Server-B)</td><td></td><td>Active</td><td>1</td><td>16 mins 34 secs</td><td>0.17 %</td><td>22 %</td><td>5 %</td><td>Restart Reboot</td></tr><tr><td>10.240.241.15 ()</td><td></td><td>On-line</td><td>1</td><td>2 mins 45 secs</td><td>0.1 %</td><td>0 %</td><td>19 %</td><td>Restart Reboot</td></tr></tbody></table></div>			Overall		Utilization			Actions			State	Blade Failures	Uptime	Disk	CPU	Memory		10.240.241.16 (Server-B)		Active	1	16 mins 34 secs	0.17 %	22 %	5 %	Restart Reboot	10.240.241.15 ()		On-line	1	2 mins 45 secs	0.1 %	0 %	19 %	Restart Reboot
		Overall		Utilization			Actions																														
		State	Blade Failures	Uptime	Disk	CPU	Memory																														
10.240.241.16 (Server-B)		Active	1	16 mins 34 secs	0.17 %	22 %	5 %	Restart Reboot																													
10.240.241.15 ()		On-line	1	2 mins 45 secs	0.1 %	0 %	19 %	Restart Reboot																													
13 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Platform Setting → Topology	<div><div>Platform Setting → Topology Setting → All Clusters</div><div>One CMP server will show (FS), or Force Standby in the Cluster view, and Out-of-Service in the Topology Configuration.</div><div><div>Cluster Configuration</div><div><div>Add CMP Site1 Cluster</div><div>Add CMP Site2 Cluster</div><div>Add MPE/MRA Cluster</div></div><div>Cluster Settings</div><table><thead><tr><th>Name</th><th>Appl Type</th><th>OAM VIP</th><th>Server-A</th><th>Server-B</th><th>Operation</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>CMP Site1 Cluster (P)</td><td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td><td>10.250.85.9</td><td>10.250.85.7 (FS)</td><td>10.250.85.8</td><td>View</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mpe-02</td><td>MPE</td><td>10.250.85.12</td><td>10.250.85.10</td><td>10.250.85.11</td><td>View Delete</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mpe-03</td><td>MPE</td><td>10.250.85.15</td><td>10.250.85.13</td><td>10.250.85.14</td><td>View Delete</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mra</td><td>MRA</td><td>10.250.85.6</td><td>10.250.85.4</td><td>10.250.85.5</td><td>View Delete</td></tr></tbody></table></div><div>View CMP (P)</div><div><div>Topology Configuration</div><div><div>Modify Cluster Settings</div><div>Modify Server-A</div><div>Modify Server-B</div><div>Back</div></div><div>Cluster Settings</div><div><div>Name</div><div>Appl Type</div><div>HW Type</div><div>OAM VIP</div><div>Signaling VIP 1</div><div>Signaling VIP 2</div><div>Signaling VIP 3</div><div>Signaling VIP 4</div><div>CMP Site1 Cluster</div><div>CMP Site1 Cluster</div><div>C-Class</div><div>10.250.85.9 / 26</div><div>None</div><div>None</div><div>None</div><div>None</div><div>Network VLAN</div><div>OAM</div><div>IDs :</div><div>85</div></div><div><div>Server-A</div><div>Server-B</div><div><div>IP</div><div>HostName</div><div>Forced Standby</div><div>Status</div><div>10.250.85.7</div><div>slak-cmp-a</div><div>Yes</div><div>out-of-service</div></div><div><div>IP</div><div>HostName</div><div>Forced Standby</div><div>Status</div><div>10.250.85.8</div><div>slak-cmp-b</div><div>No</div><div>active</div></div></div></div></div>	Name	Appl Type	OAM VIP	Server-A	Server-B	Operation	CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.250.85.9	10.250.85.7 (FS)	10.250.85.8	View	slak-mpe-02	MPE	10.250.85.12	10.250.85.10	10.250.85.11	View Delete	slak-mpe-03	MPE	10.250.85.15	10.250.85.13	10.250.85.14	View Delete	slak-mra	MRA	10.250.85.6	10.250.85.4	10.250.85.5	View Delete					
Name	Appl Type	OAM VIP	Server-A	Server-B	Operation																																
CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.250.85.9	10.250.85.7 (FS)	10.250.85.8	View																																
slak-mpe-02	MPE	10.250.85.12	10.250.85.10	10.250.85.11	View Delete																																
slak-mpe-03	MPE	10.250.85.15	10.250.85.13	10.250.85.14	View Delete																																
slak-mra	MRA	10.250.85.6	10.250.85.4	10.250.85.5	View Delete																																

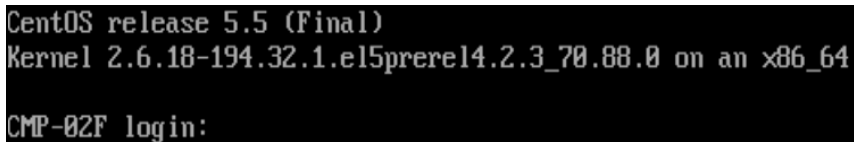
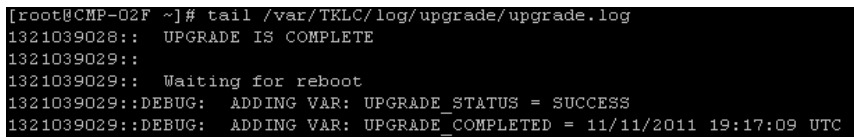
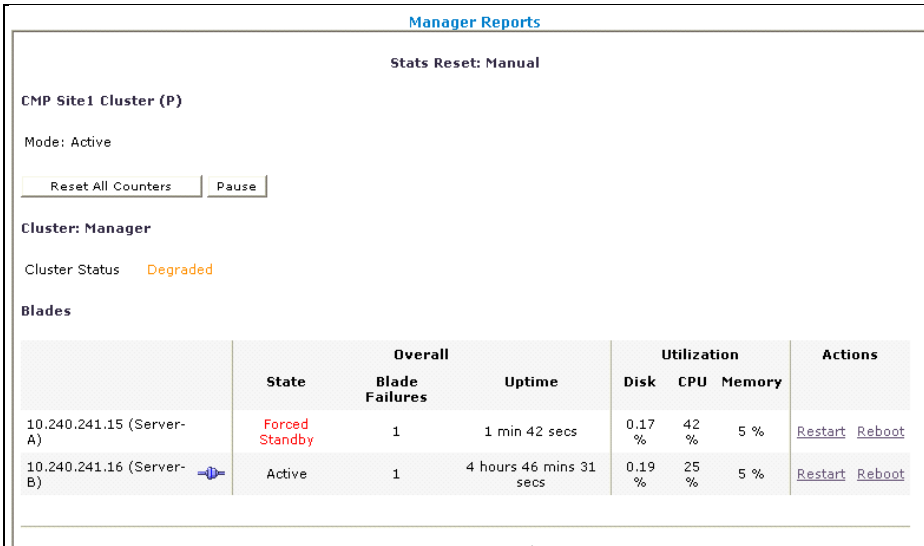
Step	Procedure	Result
14 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify System Administration → Reports	<p>Upgraded CMP will show Active, Cluster will show degraded.</p> <p>Force Standby CMP (old release) will show on-line.</p> 
15 <input type="checkbox"/>	If Verify Steps Fail	<p>If Verify steps fail, do not proceed.</p> <p>Consult with My Oracle Support.</p> <p>If needed, see Rollback Procedure for Partial Upgraded Cluster, in this document.</p>
16 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Key Exchange from Upgraded CMP server to MPE/MRAs	<pre># policySSHKey.pl --command syncSSHKeys Sync SSH Key with All C level Nodes: Begin to sync SSH key with node:C1975.230 Begin to sync SSH key with node:C1975.137 ----- NodeID IP Result C1975.230 10.240.241.19 exchanged key successfully C1975.137 10.240.241.18 exchanged key successfully</pre> <p>Verify that all key exchanges are successful. Re-execute if needed.</p> <p>NOTE: this tool expects that the root password of the MPE/MRA servers is set to the standard value. If not, the command will fail.</p> <p>In this case, use the standard command for keyexchange, for every MPE/MRA:</p> <pre># keyexchange <hostname of MPE/MRA></pre>
17 <input type="checkbox"/>	Proceed to next Procedure	<p>One-half of the Primary CMP cluster is now upgraded and Active.</p> <p>The prior-release CMP server is in (Forced Standby).</p> <p>IMPORTANT: Do not REMOVE FORCE STANDBY CONDITION on 7.5 CMP server.</p> <p>Proceed to the next Procedure to complete the Cluster Upgrade.</p>
Procedure is completed		

5.1.3 Procedure 10: Upgrade Second CMP Server and Primary Site, and Restore Cluster

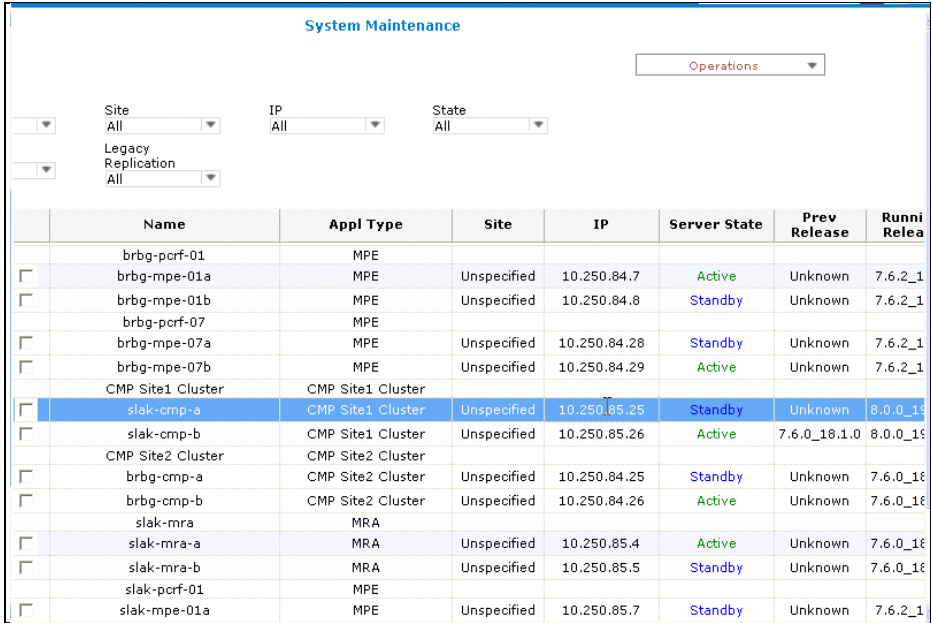
In this step, the second server of the CMP Site 1 cluster will be upgraded, and the cluster returned to Active/Standby normal condition.


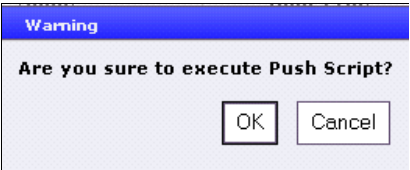

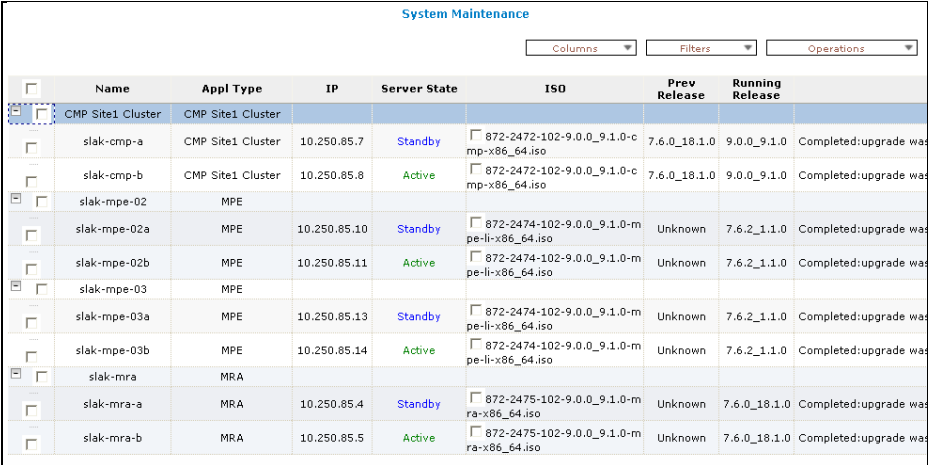
Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Status of Cluster to be Upgraded	<p>Platform Setting → Topology Setting → All Clusters</p>  <p>View CMP (P)</p> 
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>SSH: Login to Primary CMP Force Standby server</p> <p>Either:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> SSH - Access the login prompt. Log into the server as the "root" user on the iLO or RMM, and access Remote Console 	

Step	Procedure	Result																		
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Verify that the server is the correct CMP server for Upgrade	<pre># getPolicyRev 7.5.x # ha.stat</pre> <table><thead><tr><th>node</th><th>role</th><th>avail</th><th>seqNum</th><th>score</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>CSLAB-CMP1-A</td><td>ColdStandby</td><td>Offline</td><td>4573326</td><td>110010</td></tr><tr><td>CSLAB-CMP1-B</td><td>ColdStandby</td><td>Offline</td><td>4574922</td><td>80672</td></tr></tbody></table>	node	role	avail	seqNum	score	CSLAB-CMP1-A	ColdStandby	Offline	4573326	110010	CSLAB-CMP1-B	ColdStandby	Offline	4574922	80672			
node	role	avail	seqNum	score																
CSLAB-CMP1-A	ColdStandby	Offline	4573326	110010																
CSLAB-CMP1-B	ColdStandby	Offline	4574922	80672																
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Verify qp_procmgr status is running.	<pre># service qp_procmgr status</pre> <div><pre>[root@CSLAB-CMP1-A ~]# service qp_procmgr status qp_procmgr (pid 16590) is running...</pre></div> <p>NOTE: Do not continue if qp_procmgr is not running. Contact Policy TAC for Assistance.</p>																		
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Verify comcol database is running	<pre># prod.state</pre> <div><pre>[root@CSLAB-CMP1-A ~]# prod.state ...prod.state (RUNID=00)... ...getting current state... Current state: B (product under procmgr)</pre></div> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Current state “B” means the system is running and synced.If the Current state does not have a state of B. Do not continue if qp_procmgr is not running. Contact Policy TAC for Assistance.																		
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Verify that the system doesn’t have any unexpected qp_procmgr or MySQL alarms	<pre># ra.stat</pre> <table><thead><tr><th>sev</th><th>ht</th><th>timeStamp</th><th>event</th><th>instance</th><th>errInfo</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>*C</td><td>1</td><td>09:50:05.796</td><td>QP Slave database is a down</td><td></td><td>The MySQL</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>slave has a different schema version than the master.</td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody></table> <p>Ctrl-c --- to exit command</p> <p>Note: Do not continue if the system has any unexpected qp_procmgr or MySQL alarms. Contact Policy TAC for Assistance.</p>	sev	ht	timeStamp	event	instance	errInfo	*C	1	09:50:05.796	QP Slave database is a down		The MySQL				slave has a different schema version than the master.		
sev	ht	timeStamp	event	instance	errInfo															
*C	1	09:50:05.796	QP Slave database is a down		The MySQL															
			slave has a different schema version than the master.																	
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Apply Upgrade	<p>If using ssh, run the screen command to prevent hang-ups, and do not exit this screen session until the server reboots.</p> <pre># screen</pre> <pre># su - platcfg</pre> <p>Maintenance → Upgrade → Initiate Upgrade</p> <div></div> <p>This step will take about 20 Minutes, and the server will boot.</p>																		

Step	Procedure	Result																									
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH/Console/iLo: Login again to upgraded server. Verify that server returns to the login prompt after boot.																										
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify software versions	<pre># getPlatRev 5.0.1-72.45.0 # getPolicyRev 9.x.0_x.x.x</pre>																									
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify success of Upgrade	<pre># tail /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <p>The following indicates SUCCESS of Upgrade.</p> 																									
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify that the server processes are running	Verify that all server processes are Stby (Forced Standby) <pre># ha.mystate</pre> <table><thead><tr><th>resourceId</th><th>role</th><th>node</th><th>subResou</th><th>lastUpdate</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>DbReplication</td><td>Stby</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224121.532</td></tr><tr><td>VIP</td><td>Stby</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224120.872</td></tr><tr><td>QP</td><td>Stby</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224418.295</td></tr><tr><td>DbReplication_old</td><td>Stby</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224120.815</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>NOTE: It takes a minute after the server boot for all server processes to start up. If needed, run the command several times until there is the correct result.</p>	resourceId	role	node	subResou	lastUpdate	DbReplication	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224121.532	VIP	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.872	QP	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224418.295	DbReplication_old	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.815
resourceId	role	node	subResou	lastUpdate																							
DbReplication	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224121.532																							
VIP	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.872																							
QP	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224418.295																							
DbReplication_old	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.815																							
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify Replication status	<pre># inetstat</pre> <p><should show Active or Standby></p>																									
13 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: System Administration → Reports	Expected information for the Manager Reports 																									

Step	Procedure	Result																																				
14 <input type="checkbox"/>	IF Verify steps fail	If Verify steps fail, do not proceed. Consult with My Oracle Support. If needed, see Backout Procedure for a fully upgraded cluster.																																				
15 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Key Exchange from Upgraded Standby CMP server to MPE/MRAs	<div># policySSHKey.pl --command syncSSHKeys Sync SSH Key with All C level Nodes: Begin to sync SSH key with node:C1975.230 Begin to sync SSH key with node:C1975.137 ----- <table><thead><tr><th>NodeID</th><th>IP</th><th>Result</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>C1975.230</td><td>10.240.241.19</td><td>exchanged key successfully</td></tr><tr><td>C1975.137</td><td>10.240.241.18</td><td>exchanged key successfully</td></tr></tbody></table></div> Verify that all key exchanges are successful. Re-execute if needed.	NodeID	IP	Result	C1975.230	10.240.241.19	exchanged key successfully	C1975.137	10.240.241.18	exchanged key successfully																											
NodeID	IP	Result																																				
C1975.230	10.240.241.19	exchanged key successfully																																				
C1975.137	10.240.241.18	exchanged key successfully																																				
16 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Remove Forced Standby Standby	Topology Setting → <Cluster> → View → Modify (Primary Site CMP) Remove Forced Standby check mark, and Save. <div><div><div>Topology Configuration</div><div><div>Cluster Settings</div><table><tbody><tr><td>Name</td><td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Appl Type</td><td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>HW Type</td><td>C-Class</td><td>Network VLAN</td><td>OAM 85</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>IDs :</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>OAM VIP</td><td>10.250.85.27 / 26</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Signaling VIP 1</td><td>None</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Signaling VIP 2</td><td>None</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Signaling VIP 3</td><td>None</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Signaling VIP 4</td><td>None</td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody></table></div><div><div><div><div>Server-A</div><div><div>IP10.250.85.25</div><div>HostNameslak-cmp-a</div><div>Forced Standby<input checked="" type="checkbox"/></div><div>Statusstandby</div></div><div>Delete Server-A</div></div><div><div>Server-B</div><div><div>IP10.250.85.26</div><div>HostNameslak-cmp-b</div><div>Forced StandbyNo</div><div>Statusactive</div></div></div></div><div><div>Save</div><div>Cancel</div></div></div></div></div>	Name	CMP Site1 Cluster			Appl Type	CMP Site1 Cluster			HW Type	C-Class	Network VLAN	OAM 85			IDs :		OAM VIP	10.250.85.27 / 26			Signaling VIP 1	None			Signaling VIP 2	None			Signaling VIP 3	None			Signaling VIP 4	None		
Name	CMP Site1 Cluster																																					
Appl Type	CMP Site1 Cluster																																					
HW Type	C-Class	Network VLAN	OAM 85																																			
		IDs :																																				
OAM VIP	10.250.85.27 / 26																																					
Signaling VIP 1	None																																					
Signaling VIP 2	None																																					
Signaling VIP 3	None																																					
Signaling VIP 4	None																																					
17 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Active/Standby Cluster	Topology Setting → <CMP Cluster> → View CMP Servers will have status of Active and Standby.																																				

Step	Procedure	Result
18 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify that the standby server is 'Stby' and Active Server is Active.	<pre># ha.mystate resourceId role node subResou lastUpdate DbReplication Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224121.532 VIP Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224120.872 QP Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224418.295 DbReplication_old Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224120.815 # ha.states resourceId role node subResou lastUpdate DbReplication Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224121.532 DbReplication Active A2635.228 0 0612:224121.247 VIP Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224120.872 VIP Active A2635.228 0 0612:224121.355 QP Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224418.295 QP Active A2635.228 0 0612:224121.294 DbReplication_old Active A2635.228 0 0612:224121.245 DbReplication_old Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224120.815</pre> <p>NOTE: the assigned node Ids for the two servers will depend on the installation. These Ids are internal to the software.</p>
19 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify access to Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance	Open Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Note status 

Step	Procedure	Result
20 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>GUI: Upgrade Manager - Get accurate status from all servers by Push of Upgrade status scripts</p> <p>Repeat for all servers until the Upgrade Status column is completed.</p>	<p>Open the Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance.</p> <p>Wait for it to fully populate.</p> <p>The 7.5.x servers will typically show an Upgrade Status of unknown.</p> <p>Select a 7.5.x server in the Standby state, using the selection checkbox, and click Operation. It will display “Loading”, and after a couple of seconds, the list of allowed operations displays:</p>  <p>NOTE: The Operations pick list is specific to the current state of the selected server.</p> <p>Select Operation → Push Script.</p>   <p>Wait a few seconds for the command to complete and the results to show in the form.</p> <p>Repeat the Push Script action for each server. Multi-select is supported.</p> <p>When done, Verify that the System Maintenance view shows the status of all the deployed servers, at all sites. It should show Completed: upgrade <from the previous install or upgrade of the server>.</p> 
21 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Procedure is complete.</p>	<p>CMP Active Site Cluster Upgrade is complete.</p> <p>If the Operator has Secondary-CMP site, it may be upgraded in the same maintenance window.</p> <p>CAUTION: it is not supported to Demote/Promote from a Primary CMP cluster (9.x) to a Secondary CMP cluster (7.5.x).</p> <p>CAUTION: No Configuration or Topology changes are supported from 9.x CMPs to 7.5.x MPE/MRA clusters. The GUI does not prevent this, but the actions may not work as expected.</p>
Procedure is completed		

5.2 Upgrade Secondary Site CMP Cluster (if Deployed by Operator)

If the Operator deployment includes a CMP Secondary Site, this procedure must be executed. If not, this procedure can be skipped.

It is possible to upgrade the Secondary Site CMPs in the same maintenance window as the Active Site CMPs, or in a later maintenance window. However, the Secondary-site CMPs should be upgraded before any of the MRAs and MPEs.

For this procedure, CMP Active site (Primary) cluster is already upgraded to 9.x.

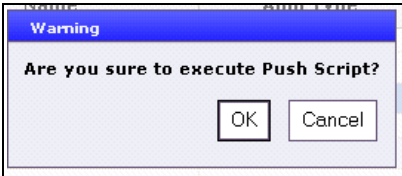

The CMP Secondary-site servers will be reporting Critical alarms that they are not able to sync with Active site due to version mismatch.


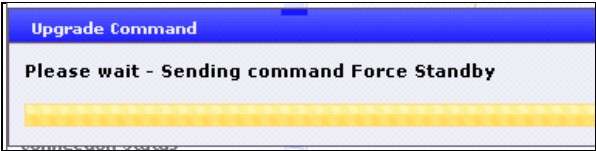

This procedure will use the Policy Management 9.x Upgrade Manager feature.

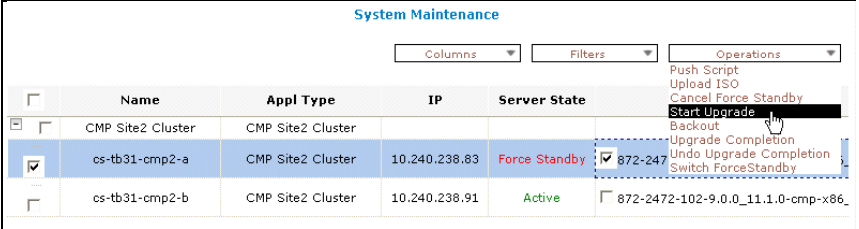
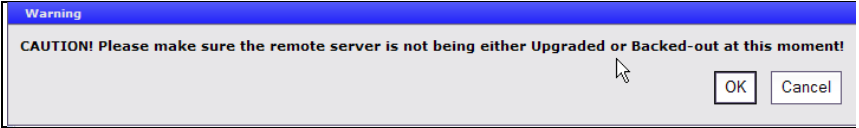
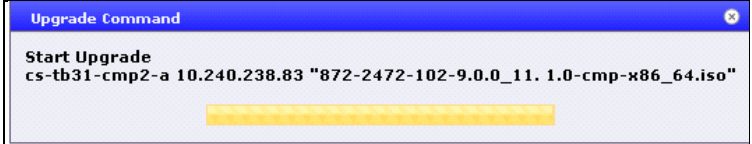
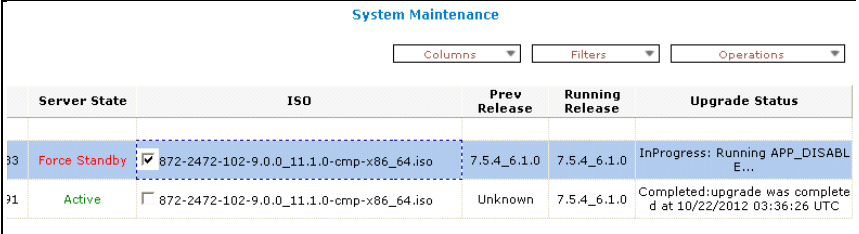
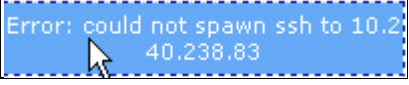
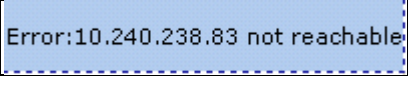
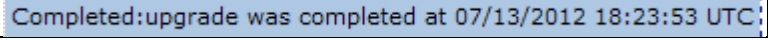
5.2.1 Procedure 11: Upgrade Secondary-Site CMPs

IMPORTANT: This procedure should be performed in a maintenance window.

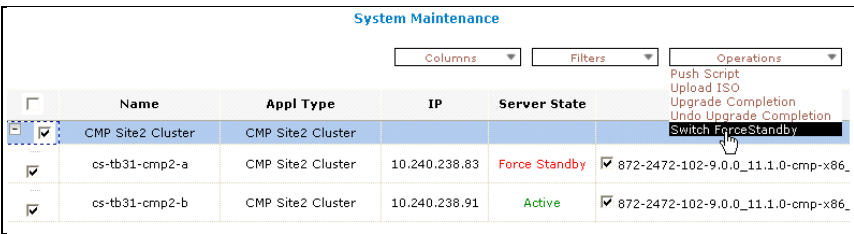
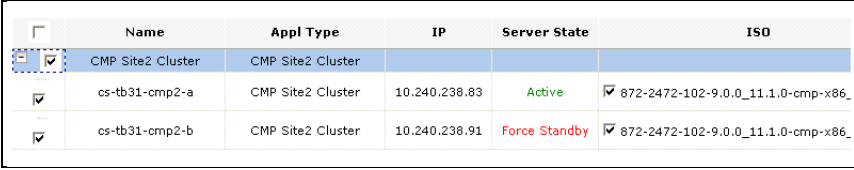
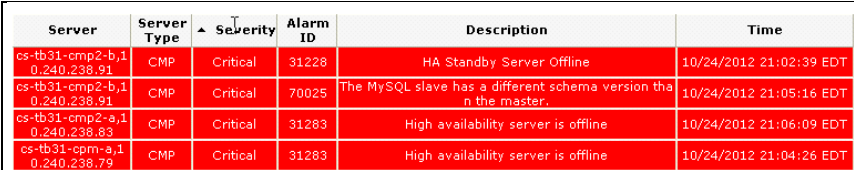
Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Perform Health checks	From the CMP Manager GUI, review the health of the Policy System. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• View Active Alarms• View KPI forms• Reset Counters on network elements to provide a baseline for the upgrade. If there are issues in the Policy System, consider if it is wise to proceed.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Open window to Active CMP server (VIP) Login to the server as the root user	<pre>login: root Password: <enter password></pre> <p>Confirm that this is active server:</p> <pre># ha.mystate resourceId role node subResou lastUpdate DbReplication Active A2635.240 0 0612:224121.532 VIP Active A2635.240 0 0612:224120.872 QP Active A2635.240 0 0612:224418.295 DbReplication_old Active A2635.240 0 0612:224120.815</pre> <p>This session will be used for executing a switchover command later in this procedure. Keep this window open.</p>

Step	Procedure	Result																												
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Confirm Status for 1 st Secondary-CMP	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>WAIT for the form to fully populate. This may take a few seconds.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Review Software Release statusReview Upgrade status <p>Primary site CMPs should be on 9.x.</p> <p>Secondary site CMPs should be on 7.5.x.</p> <p>IF NEEDED: if the Upgrade Status shows an error, it may be needed to execute the Push Script Action, as follows:</p> <p>9. Select checkbox for a CMP and select Operation → Push Script</p> <div></div> <div></div> <p>10. Review Software Release status</p> <p>11. Review Upgrade status</p>																												
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Push Script – 2 nd Secondary-CMP	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Repeat Push Script operation for second CMP at Secondary-site</p>																												
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify status of selected CMPs	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>At the top of the form, select Application Filter: the current Secondary site: either Site1 CMP Cluste", or Site2 CMP Cluster. The form will now display only CMPs at the site to be upgraded.</p> <p>NOTE: The Secondary site may be either Site1 or Site2.</p> <p>Example</p> <table><tr><th>Name</th><th>Appl Type</th><th>Site</th><th>IP</th><th>Server State</th><th>Prev Release</th><th>Running Release</th></tr><tr><td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td><td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>brbg-cmp-a</td><td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.84.25</td><td>Standby</td><td>Unknown</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td></tr><tr><td>brbg-cmp-b</td><td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.84.26</td><td>Active</td><td>Unknown</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td></tr></table>	Name	Appl Type	Site	IP	Server State	Prev Release	Running Release	CMP Site2 Cluster	CMP Site2 Cluster						brbg-cmp-a	CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.25	Standby	Unknown	7.6.0_18.1.0	brbg-cmp-b	CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.26	Active	Unknown	7.6.0_18.1.0
Name	Appl Type	Site	IP	Server State	Prev Release	Running Release																								
CMP Site2 Cluster	CMP Site2 Cluster																													
brbg-cmp-a	CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.25	Standby	Unknown	7.6.0_18.1.0																								
brbg-cmp-b	CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.26	Active	Unknown	7.6.0_18.1.0																								

Step	Procedure	Result																								
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Force Standby on standby Secondary-CMP	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select the check box for the Standby CMP server at the site and select the:</p> <p>Operation → Force Standby</p> <p>(It takes approximately 15 seconds for the Operations list to load.)</p> <p>There will be the following dialogs:</p> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <p>Confirm that the server state is changed to Force Standby in the form (may take several seconds).</p> <table><thead><tr><th></th><th>Name</th><th>Appl Type</th><th>Site</th><th>IP</th><th>Server State</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td><td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td>brbg-cmp-a</td><td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.84.25</td><td>Force Standby</td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>brbg-cmp-b</td><td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.84.26</td><td>Active</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>This step will prevent the server from becoming Active. The current Active CMP is unaffected. Alarms are expected.</p>		Name	Appl Type	Site	IP	Server State	<input type="checkbox"/>	CMP Site2 Cluster	CMP Site2 Cluster				<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	brbg-cmp-a	CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.25	Force Standby	<input type="checkbox"/>	brbg-cmp-b	CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.26	Active
	Name	Appl Type	Site	IP	Server State																					
<input type="checkbox"/>	CMP Site2 Cluster	CMP Site2 Cluster																								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	brbg-cmp-a	CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.25	Force Standby																					
<input type="checkbox"/>	brbg-cmp-b	CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.26	Active																					

Step	Procedure	Result
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>GUI: Upgrade for Force Standby Secondary-CMP</p> <p>NOTE: This step requires that the 9.x CMP Software image (.iso) was previously copied to the server and placed in the /var/TKLC/upgrade directory.</p> <p>This was done in the Upgrade preparations steps.</p>	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>For the Force Standby CMP server, confirm that the checkbox is set for the server and the desired ISO file, and select -</p> <p>Operation → Start Upgrade</p>  <p>Confirm the operation, and verify that the Upgrade request was executed successfully.</p>  
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Wait for Upgrade to process</p> <p>This step will take 20 minute or more, and the server will boot during this time</p>	<p>Wait for Upgrade to proceed.</p> <p>Monitor Upgrade Progress, if desired:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Follow status on the Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance form: Upgrade Status  <p>The Upgrade status will proceed through several status messages.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Optional: Login to Server Console via the iLo of the server, and monitor the console output to confirm upgrade progress <p>NOTE: The following error messages are seen when the server is re-booting:</p>   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> After the server re-boots, Confirm that status on the GUI form is Completed. 

Step	Procedure	Result																									
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH : Upgraded server – Verify Upgrade completed sucessfully	SSH to Blade and verify current rev: <pre># getPlatRev # getPolicyRev</pre> View Upgrade log from the server: <pre># tail /var/TKLC/log/upgrade.log ...</pre> 1351126214:: UPGRADE IS COMPLETE 1351126214:: 1351126214:: Waiting for reboot 1351126214::DEBUG: ADDING VAR: UPGRADE_STATUS = SUCCESS 1351126214::DEBUG: ADDING VAR: UPGRADE_COMPLETED = 10/25/2012 00:50:14 UTC UTC																									
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Upgraded server - Verify that the server processes are running	Verify that all server processes are Stby (Forced Standby) <pre># ha.mystate</pre> <table><thead><tr><th>resourceId</th><th>role</th><th>node</th><th>subResou</th><th>lastUpdate</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>DbReplication</td><td>Stby</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224121.532</td></tr><tr><td>VIP</td><td>Stby</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224120.872</td></tr><tr><td>QP</td><td>Stby</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224418.295</td></tr><tr><td>DbReplication_old</td><td>Stby</td><td>A2635.240</td><td>0</td><td>0612:224120.815</td></tr></tbody></table> NOTE: It takes a minute after the server boot for all server processes to start up. If needed, run the command several times until there is the correct result.	resourceId	role	node	subResou	lastUpdate	DbReplication	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224121.532	VIP	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.872	QP	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224418.295	DbReplication_old	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.815
resourceId	role	node	subResou	lastUpdate																							
DbReplication	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224121.532																							
VIP	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.872																							
QP	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224418.295																							
DbReplication_old	Stby	A2635.240	0	0612:224120.815																							
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Upgraded server - Verify replication	<pre># inetstat</pre> Status should be Active or Standby for all items.																									
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	IF Verify steps have failed, or the Upgrade has gone more than 25 Minutes. NOTE: If the upgrade fails, the upgrade software will typically roll back automatically to the prior release and configuration.	If the Upgrade does not complete sucessfully. Do not proceed. View/collect Upgrade log and ugwrap.log from the server, if possible: <pre># cp /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log approximately # cp /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log approximately</pre> Consult with My Oracle Support. If needed, see procedure to Backout a Partial Upgrade Cluster, in this document.																									

Step	Procedure	Result
13 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Cause Switchover to Upgraded CMP	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select the checkbox for the Secondary-Site CMP cluster, and select -</p> <p>Operation → Switch ForceStandby</p>  <p>NOTE: Switch ForcedStandby may be failed due to the primary CMP server not using default password.</p>
14 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager - Verify switchover	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>After a few seconds (perhaps as many as 15 seconds), the System Maintenance form will update to show that the Active/Force Standby roles have changed. The upgraded 9.x CMP is now Active, and the 7.5.x CMP is Force Standby.</p> 
15 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Alarms	<p>View alarms and confirm status.</p> <p>The following alarms are expected:</p>  <p>DB Replication Alarms may take a few minutes to clear after the switchover.</p>
16 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>GUI: Upgrade second Secondary-CMP in Cluster</p> <p>This step will take 20 minute or more, and the server will boot during this time.</p>	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select the checkbox for the current Force Standby CMP server, and checkbox for the desired ISO, and select -</p> <p>Operation → Start Upgrade</p>

Step	Procedure	Result															
17 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Wait for Upgrade to process</p> <p>Wait for Upgrade to proceed (up to 25 minutes).</p> <p>Monitor Upgrade Progress, if desired.</p>	<p>Monitor Upgrade Progress.</p> <p>1. Follow status on the GUI: Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance: Upgrade Status</p> <table><thead><tr><th>Server State</th><th>ISO</th><th>Prev Release</th><th>Running Release</th><th>Upgrade Status</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>.83 Active</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso</td><td>7.5.4_6.1.0</td><td>9.0.0_11.1.0</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/25/2012 00:50:14 UTC</td></tr><tr><td>.91 Force Standby</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso</td><td>7.5.4_6.1.0</td><td>7.5.4_6.1.0</td><td>InProgress: Initializing upgrade...</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>The Upgrade status will proceed through several status messages.</p> <p>2. Optional: Ssh to Server and run</p> <pre># tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <p>NOTE: the following error messages are seen when the server is re-booting:</p> <div>Error: could not spawn ssh to 10.240.238.83</div> <div>Error:10.240.238.83 not reachable</div> <p>3. After the server re-boots, Confirm that status on the GUI form is Completed.</p> <div>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 18:23:53 UTC</div>	Server State	ISO	Prev Release	Running Release	Upgrade Status	.83 Active	<input type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso	7.5.4_6.1.0	9.0.0_11.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/25/2012 00:50:14 UTC	.91 Force Standby	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso	7.5.4_6.1.0	7.5.4_6.1.0	InProgress: Initializing upgrade...
Server State	ISO	Prev Release	Running Release	Upgrade Status													
.83 Active	<input type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso	7.5.4_6.1.0	9.0.0_11.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/25/2012 00:50:14 UTC													
.91 Force Standby	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso	7.5.4_6.1.0	7.5.4_6.1.0	InProgress: Initializing upgrade...													
18 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify Upgrade was successful	<pre># getPlatRev # getPolicyRev # ha.mystate # inetstat # tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre>															
19 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>IF Upgrade does not show Completed, or the Upgrade has gone more than 25 Minutes, or the verify step above fails.</p> <p>NOTE: If the upgrade fails, the upgrade software will typically roll back automatically to the prior release and configuration.</p>	<p>If the Upgrade does not complete successfully.</p> <p>Do not proceed.</p> <p>Consult with My Oracle Support.</p> <p>If needed, see procedure for Backout of Fully Upgraded cluster, in this document.</p>															
20 <input type="checkbox"/>	CMP: Upgrade Manager - Remove Forced Standby	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select check box for Force Standby CMP server (just upgraded) and select –</p> <p>Operation → Cancel Force Standby</p> <p>Follow the dialogs.</p> <p>Confirm that status on the form is updated from Force Standby to Standby after a few seconds.</p>															
21 <input type="checkbox"/>	CMP: Verify Alarm Status for Upgraded Cluster	<p>SystemWideReports → Active Alarms</p> <p>Verify that Alarms for the upgrade cluster all clear.</p>															

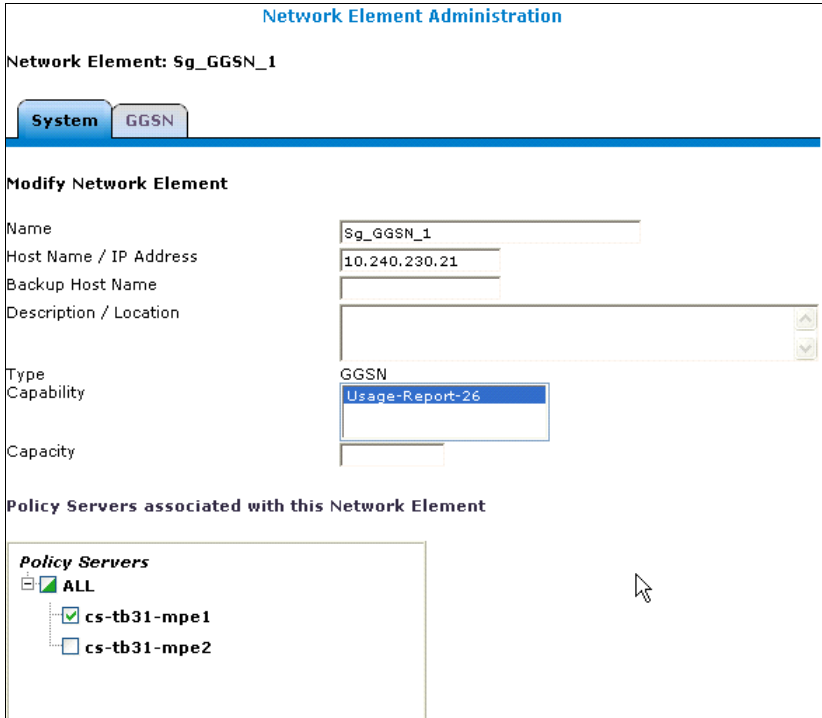
Step	Procedure	Result
22 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Active CMP at Secondary Site – verify process status	<pre> # ha.mystate resourceId role node subResou lastUpdate DbReplication Active A2635.228 0 0612:224121.532 VIP Active A2635.228 0 0612:224120.872 QP Active A2635.228 0 0612:224418.295 DbReplication_old Active A2635.228 0 0612:224120.815 # ha.states resourceId role node subResou lastUpdate DbReplication Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224121.532 DbReplication Active A2635.228 0 0612:224121.247 VIP Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224120.872 VIP Active A2635.228 0 0612:224121.355 QP Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224418.295 QP Active A2635.228 0 0612:224121.294 DbReplication_old Active A2635.228 0 0612:224121.245 DbReplication_old Stby A2635.240 0 0612:224120.815 </pre>
23 <input type="checkbox"/>	CMP: IF problems, rollback	he Upgraded cluster is not in a normal condition, consult with My Oracle Support. If need, see procedure to backout a Fully Upgraded Cluster, in this document.
24 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Active Alarms	No Active Alarms are expected
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

6. UPGRADE SITES

The following procedures will upgrade a site containing one or more MPE clusters, and (optional) MRA cluster.

6.1 Site Upgrade Preparations

6.1.1 Procedure 12: Configuration Preparations Procedure

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Open CMP GUI	Login to CMP GUI as Administrator (or as Upgrade Engineer, if an account is defined for this).
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Upgrade Manager status display	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Open form wait a few seconds for the Status of the servers in the managed network to be displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Verify that status is shown for all servers. Verify that the CMP clusters are upgraded to release 9.x <p>If Upgrade status is not shown, it may be necessary to run the operation to Push Script to the servers.</p> <p>To do this:</p> <p>Select each server at the site (one at a time) using the checkbox, and select the</p> <p>Operation → Push Script</p> <p>Confirm that status information on the form (including Upgrade Status) is updated after a few seconds.</p> <p>This step is not service affecting. It must be done before the Upgrade action is applied.</p>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Configure Network Element Capability (if needed)	<p>GUI: Network → Network Elements → GGSN</p> <p>For compatibility of Policy Management 9.x with ggsn systems that use Usage-Report-26, select this option and save.</p>  <p>Network Element Administration</p> <p>Network Element: Sg_GGSN_1</p> <p>System GGSN</p> <p>Modify Network Element</p> <p>Name Sg_GGSN_1</p> <p>Host Name / IP Address 10.240.230.21</p> <p>Backup Host Name</p> <p>Description / Location</p> <p>Type GGSN</p> <p>Capability Usage-Report-26</p> <p>Capacity</p> <p>Policy Servers associated with this Network Element</p> <p>Policy Servers</p> <p>ALL</p> <p>cs-tb31-mpe1</p> <p>cs-tb31-mpe2</p>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

6.1.2 Procedure 13: Key Exchanges from CMPs to MPE/MRA

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Open CMP GUI	Login to CMP GUI as Administrator (or as Upgrade Engineer, if an account is defined for this).
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP Verify Key exchanges to MPE/MRA servers	Ssh to Primary Active CMP Verify key exchanges from CMP to the MPE/MRA servers are completed: <pre># policySSHKey.pl --command checkSSHKeys</pre> Check output to confirm that key exchanges are completed.
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP If keyExchange needs to be updated	IF the check of Key exchanges (previous step) shows that certain exchanges are not completed, then ex-execute Key Exchange tool: <pre># policySSHKey.pl --command syncSSHKeys</pre> Example output: <pre>Sync SSH Key with All C level Nodes: Begin to sync SSH key with node:C1180.027 Begin to sync SSH key with node:C0682.103 Begin to sync SSH key with node:C3474.104 Begin to sync SSH key with node:C0682.146 Begin to sync SSH key with node:C1180.101 Begin to sync SSH key with node:C3474.070 ----- NodeID IP Result C1180.027 10.240.238.89 exchanged key successfully C0682.103 10.240.238.92 exchanged key successfully C3474.104 10.240.238.80 exchanged key successfully C0682.146 10.240.238.84 exchanged key successfully C1180.101 10.240.238.81 exchanged key successfully C3474.070 10.240.238.88 exchanged key successfully [root@cs-tb31-cmpb approximately]#</pre> If any key exchanges fail, run this command again.
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Standby CMP Verify Key exchange	Ssh to Primary Standby CMP Execute this tool to verify key exchanges from CMP to the MPE/MRA servers: <pre># policySSHKey.pl --command checkSSHKeys</pre> If any key Exchanges are incomplete: <pre># policySSHKey.pl --command syncSSHKeys</pre>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Secondary Active CMP Verify Key exchange	Ssh to Secondary Active CMP Execute this tool to verify key exchanges from CMP to the MPE/MRA servers: <pre># policySSHKey.pl --command checkSSHKeys</pre> If any key Exchanges are incomplete: <pre># policySSHKey.pl --command syncSSHKeys</pre>

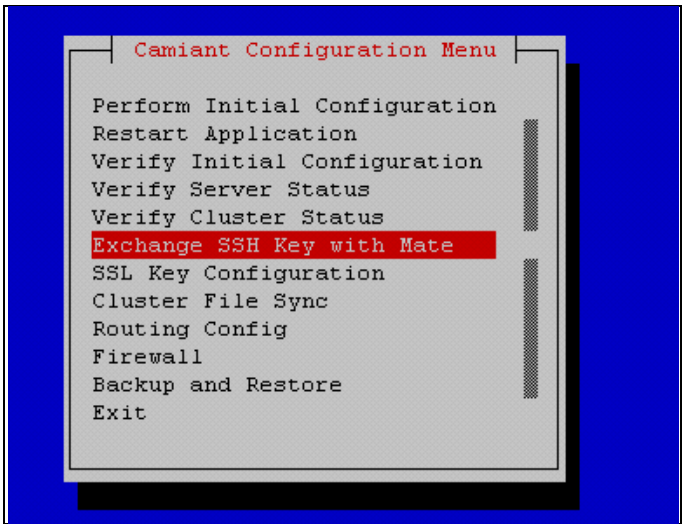
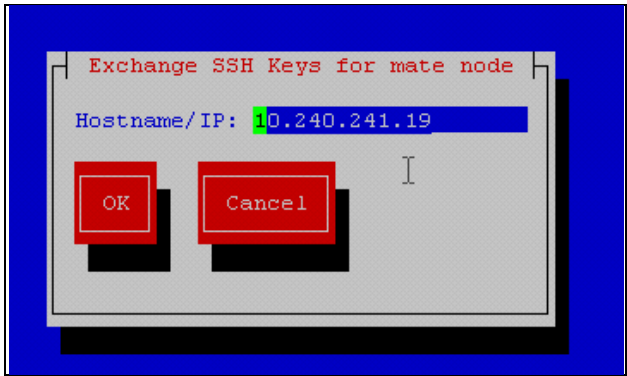
Step	Procedure	Result
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Secondary Standby CMP Verify Key exchange	Ssh to Secondary Standby CMP Execute this tool to verify key exchanges from CMP to the MPE/MRA servers: # policySSHKey.pl --command checkSSHKeys If any key Exchanges are incomplete: # policySSHKey.pl --command syncSSHKeys
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Upgrade Manager status display	GUI: Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Open form wait a few seconds for the Status of the servers in the managed network to be displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify that status is shown for all servers. • Verify that the CMP clusters are upgraded to release 9.x If Upgrade status is not shown , it may be necessary to execute the operation to Push Script to the servers. To do this: Select each server at the site (one at a time) using the checkbox, and select the Operation → Push Script Confirm that status information on the form (including Upgrade Status) is updated after a few seconds. This step is not service affecting. It must be done before the Upgrade action is applied.
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

6.1.3 Procedure 14: Key Exchanges Between Servers of MPE/MRA Clusters

This procedure will execute Key Exchanges between servers of MPE/MRA clusters, at the site to be upgraded. Policy Management 9.x requires that a key exchange is performed between MPE/MRA servers in a cluster.

It must be performed for every MPE/MRA cluster.

Step	Procedure	Result
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Open CMP GUI	Login to CMP GUI as Administrator (or as Upgrade Engineer, if an account is defined for this).
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: any CMP server	# cat /etc/hosts grep <mpe mra>
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: from CMP server, ssh to a MPE/MRA server	# ssh <hostname_of_MPE/MRA_server>

Step	Procedure	Result
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: MPE/MRA – perform Key Exchange using platcfg	<p>At MPE/MRA:</p> <pre># su - platcfg</pre> <p>Camiant Configuration → Exchange ssh Key with Mate</p> 
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: MPE/MRA – Key Exchange dialog	<p>The Mate IP address will be pre-populated.</p> <p>Select OK</p>  <p>There are two successful results:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Success Dialog (if key is exchanged) • A return to the platcfg menu with no dialog (if key was previously exchanged, and does not need to be exchanged)
13 <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for each cluster	<p>The key exchange is performed on one of the two servers of the cluster.</p> <p>Repeat this procedure for each MPE/MRA cluster at the site.</p>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

6.1.4 Procedure 15: Verify Deployed Software Images at Site MPE/MRA Server

Detailed steps are shown in the procedure below to verify that the image files are correctly deployed and ready for upgrade activity at the MPE/MRA servers. The software ISO files were previously deployed to these servers during upgrade preparation.

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Active CMP Log into the server as the root user	login: root Password: <root_password>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Active CMP - Verify Image is deployed at MPE/MRA Rel 9.x Application Part Numbers: CMP – 872-2472-101 MPE – 872-2473-101 MPE-LI – 872-2474-101 MRA – 872-2475-101	<pre># cat /etc/hostname grep <mpe/mra> # ssh <MPE/MRA hostname> # getPolicyRev 7.5.x.x.x.x # getPolicyRev -p mpe or mra # ls -l /var/TKLC/upgrade total 706236 -rw-r--r-- 1 root root 863408128 Jul 3 03:04 mpe--9.x.0_18.2.0--872-2473-101--x86_64.iso</pre> Verify that the ISO matches the correct part number for this server function (MRA, MPE, MPE-LI), and Verify there is only one ISO in this directory.
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: MPE/MRA Validate ISO image	This step will validate the ISO image at the MPE/MRA server: # su - platcfg Maintenance → Upgrade → Validate Note Success of Validation exit from platcfg # exit
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each MPE and MRA server in the site to be upgraded.	List of MPE _____ List of MRA _____
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

6.2 Upgrade MPE Clusters

This procedure will upgrade one or more MPE clusters at a site.

This can be performed before or after MRA upgrade at the site.

This section can be replicated for each site to be upgraded, to allow the Upgrade engineer to add cluster and site specific information.

NOTES:

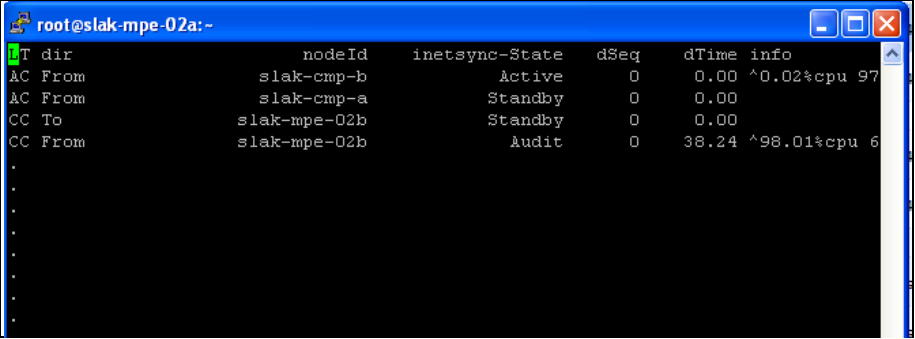
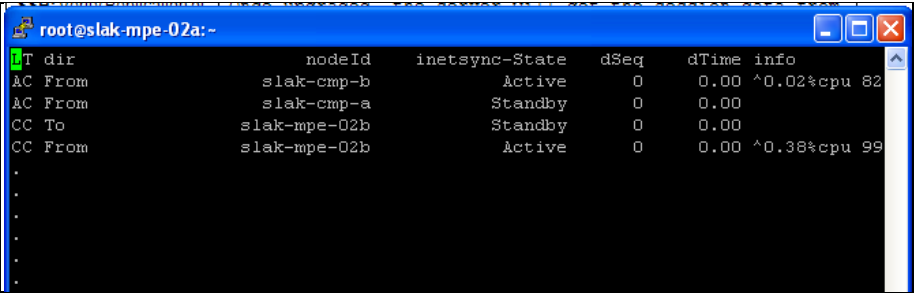
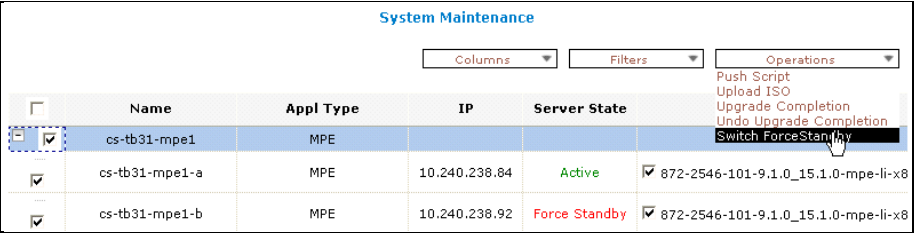
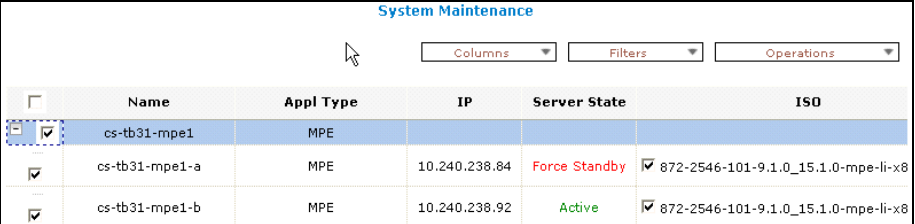
- CMPs must be upgraded before executing this procedure.
- Application software is previously deployed to the upgrade directory on the servers at the site (see pre-upgrade procedure)
- This procedure will use the Upgrade Manager functionality on the CMP GUI to perform the upgrade of the MPEs.

6.2.1 Procedure 16: Upgrade MPEs – Site

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Health Checks	GUI: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check Active Alarms • (Optional) Reset MPE counters to make a baseline • Check KPI Dashboard (take a snap shot) • Verify current call rates (pre-upgrade) to compare after upgrade
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Open ssh session to Primary Active CMP	<pre>login: root Password: <enter password></pre> <p>This session will be used for ssh access to the servers in the network to verify status. Keep this session open.</p>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Upgrade status of selected site from the Upgrade Manager.	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance If desired, filter this form to display MPEs. Verify current Release numbers are the expected values.
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Force Standby on standby MPE(s)	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance This Activity can be applied at more than one MPE at a site, in parallel, to reduce time requirements. Select the checkbox for a Standby MPE server at the site and select - Operation → Force Standby. Confirm that status on the form is updated after several seconds. This step will prevent the server from becoming Active after the upgrade. Alarm 31228 is expected for each cluster to be upgraded.
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Start Upgrade for Force Standby MPE(s) This step will take 20 minute or more, and the server will boot during this time.	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance This Activity can be applied to multiple MPEs at a site, in parallel, to reduce time requirements. Select the checkbox for the Force Standby MPE server(s), and select the checkbox for the ISO to be installed. Then select – Operation → Start Upgrade

Step	Procedure	Result																																														
6	<div><div></div><div>GUI: Monitor Upgrade process</div></div>	<div><div>Monitor Upgrade Progress.</div><div><div>1. Follow status on the Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance: Upgrade Status</div><div><table><tr><td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.85.25</td><td>Standby</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>8.0.0_19.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>On</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 17:37:43 U</td></tr><tr><td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.85.26</td><td>Active</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>8.0.0_19.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>On</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 16:56:08 U</td></tr><tr><td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.84.25</td><td>Active</td><td>Unknown</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>Off</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/11/2012 15:00:20 U</td></tr><tr><td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.84.26</td><td>Force Standby</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>Off</td><td>InProgress: Running APP_DISABLE...</td></tr></table></div><div><div>The Upgrade status will proceed through several status messages.</div><div><div>2. Optional: ssh to server, run</div><div><div># tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</div></div></div><div><div>NOTE: If upgrade fails due to the missing files, follow the workaround below (following errors will be logged in upgrade.log):</div><div><div>1369689305:: Checking for any missing packages or files</div><div>1369689305:: Checking for missing files...</div><div>1369689306::Missing Files:</div><div>1369689308:: 0:TKLCSavelogsplat-4.1.17-4.2.3_70.84.0:</div><div>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/savelogs_plat.d/rpms</div><div>1369689308::</div><div>1369689308::ERROR: There are files missing from some rpms!</div><div>1369689308::ERROR: Will not upgrade the server!</div><div>1369689308:: Restarting cron service...</div></div><div><div>Work Around:</div><div>Copy the rpms file from /tmp to the /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/savelogs_plat.d/ directory.</div><div><div>NOTE: The following error messages are seen when the server is re-booting:</div><div><div>Error: could not spawn ssh to 10.240.238.83</div><div>Error:10.240.238.83 not reachable</div></div><div><div>After the server re-boots,</div><div>Confirm that status on the GUI form is Completed.</div><div><div>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 18:23:53 UTC</div></div><div><div>The following alarms are expected:</div><div><table><tr><td>31283</td><td>High Availability Ser ver is off line</td></tr><tr><td>31228</td><td>HA Standby Server offline</td></tr><tr><td>70005</td><td>One or more servers in the cluster are not at QP Blade Status = Available</td></tr><tr><td>32305</td><td>Platform detected an error condition</td></tr><tr><td>311xx</td><td><Minor Replication Alarms></td></tr></table></div></div></div></div></div></div></div></div></div>	CMP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.25	Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 17:37:43 U	CMP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.26	Active	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 16:56:08 U	CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.25	Active	Unknown	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/11/2012 15:00:20 U	CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.26	Force Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	InProgress: Running APP_DISABLE...	31283	High Availability Ser ver is off line	31228	HA Standby Server offline	70005	One or more servers in the cluster are not at QP Blade Status = Available	32305	Platform detected an error condition	311xx	<Minor Replication Alarms>
CMP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.25	Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 17:37:43 U																																								
CMP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.26	Active	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 16:56:08 U																																								
CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.25	Active	Unknown	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/11/2012 15:00:20 U																																								
CMP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.26	Force Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	InProgress: Running APP_DISABLE...																																								
31283	High Availability Ser ver is off line																																															
31228	HA Standby Server offline																																															
70005	One or more servers in the cluster are not at QP Blade Status = Available																																															
32305	Platform detected an error condition																																															
311xx	<Minor Replication Alarms>																																															

Step	Procedure	Result
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify upgrade success on upgraded MPE servers	<p>After upgrade shows Completed, ssh session to upgraded server:</p> <pre> # getPolicyRev 9.x.0_x.x.x # tail /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log 1343413625:: UPGRADE IS COMPLETE 1343413625:: 1343413625:: Waiting for reboot 1343413625::DEBUG: ADDING VAR: UPGRADE_STATUS = SUCCESS 1343413625::DEBUG: ADDING VAR: UPGRADE_COMPLETED = 07/27/2012 18:27:05 UTC 1343413625:: Updating platform revision file... 1343413625:: 1343413625:: 1343413625:: A reboot of the server is required. 1343413625:: The server will be rebooted in 10 seconds # ha.mystate resourceId role node lastUpdate DbReplication Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.003 VIP Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.037 QP Stby C3691.123 0727:143329.774 DbReplication_old Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.104 </pre> <p>NOTE: The state for some services may be OOS for a couple of minutes after upgrade. <i>Do not proceed until the status shows Stby for all services.</i></p>

Step	Procedure	Result
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify Replication of session data	<p>Once upgraded, the server will get the session data from the Active MPE server via audit. Run this command to monitor completion of this data transfer. It may take several minutes, if there is lot of session data.</p> <pre># inetstat</pre> <p>Audit state</p>  <p>Audit Completed State</p>  <p><i>Do not proceed until status shows that Audit is complete.</i></p>
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Cause Switchover to Upgraded Server Service Affecting – up to 5 seconds of traffic impact is possible	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select the checkbox for the partially upgraded (mixed 7.5/9.x) cluster, and select -</p> <p>Operation → Switch ForceStandby</p>  <p>NOTE: Switch ForcedStandby may be failed due to the primary CMP server not using default password.</p> <p>After a several seconds, the following will be shown:</p> 

Step	Procedure	Result																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																					
10	<div><div></div><div>SSH: Verify KPI Dashboard Status</div></div>	<div><div>System Wide Reports → KPI Dashboard</div><div>Status may transition as shown in the following sequence.</div><div><div><div>KPI Dashboard (Stats Reset: Manual)</div><div><div>Show slak-mra<div><div></div><div></div></div></div><div><div>Change Thresholds</div></div></div><div><table><tr><th>slak-mra</th><th colspan="6">Performance</th><th colspan="3">Connections</th><th colspan="3">Alarms</th><th colspan="2">Protocol Errors</th></tr><tr><th>MRA</th><th>State</th><th>TPS</th><th>PDN</th><th>Active Subscribers</th><th>CPU %</th><th>Memory %</th><th>MPE</th><th>MRA</th><th>Network Elements</th><th>Critical</th><th>Major</th><th>Minor</th><th>Sent</th><th>Received</th></tr><tr><td>slak-mra(active)</td><td>On-line</td><td>97 (0%)</td><td>810790 (3%)</td><td>810791 (0%)</td><td>0</td><td>6</td><td>2 of 2</td><td>0 of 0</td><td>2 of 3</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>204</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mra(standby)</td><td>On-line</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>5</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><th>MPE</th><th>State</th><th>TPS</th><th>PDN</th><th></th><th>CPU %</th><th>Memory %</th><th>MRA</th><th>HSS</th><th></th><th>Critical</th><th>Major</th><th>Minor</th><th>Sent</th><th>Received</th></tr><tr><td>PCRf1(Server-A)</td><td>No response</td><td>----</td><td>----</td><td></td><td>----</td><td>----</td><td>----</td><td>----</td><td></td><td>----</td><td>----</td><td>----</td><td>----</td><td>----</td></tr><tr><td>PCRf1(null)</td><td>Active</td><td>55 (1%)</td><td>404945 (8%)</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>19</td><td>1 of 1</td><td>1 of 1</td><td></td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>102</td></tr><tr><td>PCRf2(active)</td><td>On-line</td><td>54 (1%)</td><td>405344 (8%)</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>19</td><td>1 of 1</td><td>1 of 1</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>102</td></tr><tr><td>PCRf2(standby)</td><td>On-line</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>19</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table></div></div></div><div><div>KPI Dashboard (Stats Reset: Manual)</div><div><div>Show slak-mra<div><div></div><div></div></div></div><div><div>Change Thresholds</div></div></div><div><table><tr><th>slak-mra</th><th colspan="6">Performance</th><th colspan="3">Connections</th><th colspan="3">Alarms</th><th colspan="2">Protocol Errors</th></tr><tr><th>MRA</th><th>State</th><th>TPS</th><th>PDN</th><th>Active Subscribers</th><th>CPU %</th><th>Memory %</th><th>MPE</th><th>MRA</th><th>Network Elements</th><th>Critical</th><th>Major</th><th>Minor</th><th>Sent</th><th>Received</th></tr><tr><td>slak-mra(active)</td><td>On-line</td><td>96 (0%)</td><td>810816 (3%)</td><td>810815 (0%)</td><td>1</td><td>6</td><td>2 of 2</td><td>0 of 0</td><td>2 of 3</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>267</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mra(standby)</td><td>On-line</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>5</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><th>MPE</th><th>State</th><th>TPS</th><th>PDN</th><th></th><th>CPU %</th><th>Memory %</th><th>MRA</th><th>HSS</th><th></th><th>Critical</th><th>Major</th><th>Minor</th><th>Sent</th><th>Received</th></tr><tr><td>PCRf1(Server-A)</td><td>Active</td><td>24 (0%)</td><td>403949 (6%)</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>7</td><td>1 of 1</td><td>1 of 1</td><td></td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>PCRf1(null)</td><td>Active</td><td>24 (0%)</td><td>403949 (6%)</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>7</td><td>1 of 1</td><td>1 of 1</td><td></td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>PCRf2(active)</td><td>On-line</td><td>89 (2%)</td><td>405494 (8%)</td><td></td><td>1</td><td>19</td><td>1 of 1</td><td>1 of 1</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>102</td></tr><tr><td>PCRf2(standby)</td><td>On-line</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>19</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table></div></div></div> <div><div>KPI Dashboard (Stats Reset: Manual)</div><div><div>Show slak-mra<div><div></div><div></div></div></div><div><div>Change Thresholds</div></div></div><div><table><tr><th>slak-mra</th><th colspan="6">Performance</th><th colspan="3">Connections</th><th colspan="3">Alarms</th><th colspan="2">Protocol Errors</th></tr><tr><th>MRA</th><th>State</th><th>TPS</th><th>PDN</th><th>Active Subscribers</th><th>CPU %</th><th>Memory %</th><th>MPE</th><th>MRA</th><th>Network Elements</th><th>Critical</th><th>Major</th><th>Minor</th><th>Sent</th><th>Received</th></tr><tr><td>slak-mra(active)</td><td>On-line</td><td>95 (0%)</td><td>810840 (3%)</td><td>810840 (0%)</td><td>0</td><td>6</td><td>2 of 2</td><td>0 of 0</td><td>2 of 3</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>267</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mra(standby)</td><td>On-line</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>5</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><th>MPE</th><th>State</th><th>TPS</th><th>PDN</th><th></th><th>CPU %</th><th>Memory %</th><th>MRA</th><th>HSS</th><th></th><th>Critical</th><th>Major</th><th>Minor</th><th>Sent</th><th>Received</th></tr><tr><td>PCRf1(Server-A)</td><td>Active</td><td>19 (0%)</td><td>403863 (6%)</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>7</td><td>1 of 1</td><td>1 of 1</td><td></td><td>2</td><td>2</td><td>2</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>PCRf1(null)</td><td>No Data</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>PCRf2(active)</td><td>On-line</td><td>93 (2%)</td><td>405602 (8%)</td><td></td><td>1</td><td>19</td><td>1 of 1</td><td>1 of 1</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>102</td></tr><tr><td>PCRf2(standby)</td><td>On-line</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>19</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table></div></div>	slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors		MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received	slak-mra(active)	On-line	97 (0%)	810790 (3%)	810791 (0%)	0	6	2 of 2	0 of 0	2 of 3	0	0	0	204	0	slak-mra(standby)	On-line				0	5									MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received	PCRf1(Server-A)	No response	----	----		----	----	----	----		----	----	----	----	----	PCRf1(null)	Active	55 (1%)	404945 (8%)		0	19	1 of 1	1 of 1		2	1	0	0	102	PCRf2(active)	On-line	54 (1%)	405344 (8%)		0	19	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	0	0	102	PCRf2(standby)	On-line				0	19									slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors		MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received	slak-mra(active)	On-line	96 (0%)	810816 (3%)	810815 (0%)	1	6	2 of 2	0 of 0	2 of 3	0	0	0	267	0	slak-mra(standby)	On-line				0	5									MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received	PCRf1(Server-A)	Active	24 (0%)	403949 (6%)		0	7	1 of 1	1 of 1		2	3	2	0	0	PCRf1(null)	Active	24 (0%)	403949 (6%)		0	7	1 of 1	1 of 1		2	3	2	0	0	PCRf2(active)	On-line	89 (2%)	405494 (8%)		1	19	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	0	0	102	PCRf2(standby)	On-line				0	19									slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors		MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received	slak-mra(active)	On-line	95 (0%)	810840 (3%)	810840 (0%)	0	6	2 of 2	0 of 0	2 of 3	0	0	0	267	0	slak-mra(standby)	On-line				0	5									MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received	PCRf1(Server-A)	Active	19 (0%)	403863 (6%)		0	7	1 of 1	1 of 1		2	2	2	0	0	PCRf1(null)	No Data				0	0									PCRf2(active)	On-line	93 (2%)	405602 (8%)		1	19	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	0	0	102	PCRf2(standby)	On-line				0	19								
slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																										
MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
slak-mra(active)	On-line	97 (0%)	810790 (3%)	810791 (0%)	0	6	2 of 2	0 of 0	2 of 3	0	0	0	204	0																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
slak-mra(standby)	On-line				0	5																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																	
MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
PCRf1(Server-A)	No response	----	----		----	----	----	----		----	----	----	----	----																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
PCRf1(null)	Active	55 (1%)	404945 (8%)		0	19	1 of 1	1 of 1		2	1	0	0	102																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
PCRf2(active)	On-line	54 (1%)	405344 (8%)		0	19	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	0	0	102																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
PCRf2(standby)	On-line				0	19																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																	
slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																										
MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
slak-mra(active)	On-line	96 (0%)	810816 (3%)	810815 (0%)	1	6	2 of 2	0 of 0	2 of 3	0	0	0	267	0																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
slak-mra(standby)	On-line				0	5																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																	
MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
PCRf1(Server-A)	Active	24 (0%)	403949 (6%)		0	7	1 of 1	1 of 1		2	3	2	0	0																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
PCRf1(null)	Active	24 (0%)	403949 (6%)		0	7	1 of 1	1 of 1		2	3	2	0	0																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
PCRf2(active)	On-line	89 (2%)	405494 (8%)		1	19	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	0	0	102																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
PCRf2(standby)	On-line				0	19																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																	
slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																										
MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
slak-mra(active)	On-line	95 (0%)	810840 (3%)	810840 (0%)	0	6	2 of 2	0 of 0	2 of 3	0	0	0	267	0																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
slak-mra(standby)	On-line				0	5																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																	
MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
PCRf1(Server-A)	Active	19 (0%)	403863 (6%)		0	7	1 of 1	1 of 1		2	2	2	0	0																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
PCRf1(null)	No Data				0	0																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																	
PCRf2(active)	On-line	93 (2%)	405602 (8%)		1	19	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	0	0	102																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
PCRf2(standby)	On-line				0	19																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																	

Step	Procedure	Result																																																																																																																																							
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Reapply MPE Cluster Configuration	PolicyServer → Configuration → <cluster> → System Click Reapply Configuration <div><div>Policy Server Administration</div><div>Policy Server: slak-mpe-02</div><div><div>SystemReportsLogsPolicy ServerDiameter RoutingPoliciesData Sources</div><div>ModifyDeleteReapply Configuration</div></div><div>Configuration</div><div><div>Name Status Version Description / Location</div><div>slak-mpe-02 Degraded 9.0.0 <div></div></div></div><div><div>Secure Connection Legacy Type System Time</div><div>No No Tekelec Sep 20, 2012 07:34 PM EDT</div></div></div> Verify success of Configuration reapply.																																																																																																																																							
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify MPE Cluster Traffic	PolicyServer → Configuration → <cluster> → Reports Verify that Upgraded server is Active and other server is Forced Standby. Verify that the Reports show server is processing traffic.																																																																																																																																							
13 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify KPI Dashboard	SystemWideReports → KPI Dashboard Compare to pre-upgrade KPI Dashboard. <div><div><div>Show slak-mra<input checked="" type="checkbox"/></div><div>Change Thresholds</div></div><div><table><thead><tr><th>slak-mra</th><th colspan="6">Performance</th><th colspan="3">Connections</th><th colspan="3">Alarms</th><th colspan="2">Protocol Errors</th></tr><tr><th>MRA</th><th>State</th><th>TPS</th><th>PDN</th><th>Active Subscribers</th><th>CPU %</th><th>Memory %</th><th>MPE</th><th>MRA</th><th>Network Elements</th><th>Critical</th><th>Major</th><th>Minor</th><th>Sent</th><th>Received</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>slak-mra(active)</td><td>On-line</td><td>95 (0%)</td><td>810840 (3%)</td><td>810840 (0%)</td><td>0</td><td>6</td><td>2 of 2</td><td>0 of 0</td><td>2 of 3</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>267</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mra(standby)</td><td>On-line</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>5</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><th>MPE</th><th>State</th><th>TPS</th><th>PDN</th><th></th><th>CPU %</th><th>Memory %</th><th>MRA</th><th>HSS</th><th></th><th>Critical</th><th>Major</th><th>Minor</th><th>Sent</th><th>Received</th></tr><tr><td>PCRF1(Server-A)</td><td>Active</td><td>19 (0%)</td><td>403863 (6%)</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>7</td><td>1 of 1</td><td>1 of 1</td><td></td><td>2</td><td>2</td><td>2</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>PCRF1(null)</td><td>No Data</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>PCRF2(active)</td><td>On-line</td><td>93 (2%)</td><td>405602 (8%)</td><td></td><td>1</td><td>19</td><td>1 of 1</td><td>1 of 1</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>102</td></tr><tr><td>PCRF2(standby)</td><td>On-line</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>19</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody></table></div></div> If possible, confirm with customer that traffic is normal for Network element connected devices.	slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors		MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received	slak-mra(active)	On-line	95 (0%)	810840 (3%)	810840 (0%)	0	6	2 of 2	0 of 0	2 of 3	0	0	0	267	0	slak-mra(standby)	On-line				0	5									MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received	PCRF1(Server-A)	Active	19 (0%)	403863 (6%)		0	7	1 of 1	1 of 1		2	2	2	0	0	PCRF1(null)	No Data				0	0									PCRF2(active)	On-line	93 (2%)	405602 (8%)		1	19	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	0	0	102	PCRF2(standby)	On-line				0	19								
slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors																																																																																																																												
MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received																																																																																																																											
slak-mra(active)	On-line	95 (0%)	810840 (3%)	810840 (0%)	0	6	2 of 2	0 of 0	2 of 3	0	0	0	267	0																																																																																																																											
slak-mra(standby)	On-line				0	5																																																																																																																																			
MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received																																																																																																																											
PCRF1(Server-A)	Active	19 (0%)	403863 (6%)		0	7	1 of 1	1 of 1		2	2	2	0	0																																																																																																																											
PCRF1(null)	No Data				0	0																																																																																																																																			
PCRF2(active)	On-line	93 (2%)	405602 (8%)		1	19	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	0	0	102																																																																																																																											
PCRF2(standby)	On-line				0	19																																																																																																																																			
14 <input type="checkbox"/>	IF Verify Step fails - Backout	If needed, fallback to 7.5/7.5 server: See Procedure of this document for Backout of a Partially Upgraded Cluster.																																																																																																																																							

Step	Procedure	Result																																																															
15 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade second MPE in Cluster This will take 20 Minutes.	<p>This step will take 20 minute or more, and the server will boot during this time.</p> <p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select check box for current Force Standby MPE server(s) and the checkbox for the ISO to be installaed at the site and select –</p> <p>Operation → Start Upgrade</p>																																																															
16 <input type="checkbox"/>	Wait for Upgrade to process	<p>Wait for Upgrade to proceed.</p> <p>Monitor Upgrade Progress, if desired:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Follow status on the GUI: Upgrade Manager →System MaintenanceSsh to server, and run: <pre># tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre>Alarms will eventually clear up. <p>Confirm that status on the GUI form is Upgrade Complete.</p> <p>NOTE: Final step of the upgrade is a Re-boot of the server. This will appear in the System Maintenance form with a Error message, like below. This is expected.</p> <div><div>Columns Filters Operations</div><table><thead><tr><th>Server State</th><th>ISO</th><th>Prev Release</th><th>Running Release</th><th>Upgrade Status</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Standby</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_9.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>9.0.0_9.1.0</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:12:00 UTC</td></tr><tr><td>Active</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_9.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>9.0.0_9.1.0</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 13:02:02 UTC</td></tr><tr><td>Active</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> 872-2474-102-9.0.0_9.1.0-mpe-li-x86_64.iso</td><td>7.6.2_1.1.0</td><td>9.0.0_9.1.0</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:53:55 UTC</td></tr><tr><td>Force Standby</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Error</td><td></td><td></td><td>Error: could not spawn ssh to 10.250.85.11</td></tr></tbody></table></div>	Server State	ISO	Prev Release	Running Release	Upgrade Status	Standby	<input type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_9.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso	7.6.0_18.1.0	9.0.0_9.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:12:00 UTC	Active	<input type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_9.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso	7.6.0_18.1.0	9.0.0_9.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 13:02:02 UTC	Active	<input type="checkbox"/> 872-2474-102-9.0.0_9.1.0-mpe-li-x86_64.iso	7.6.2_1.1.0	9.0.0_9.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:53:55 UTC	Force Standby	<input type="checkbox"/> Error			Error: could not spawn ssh to 10.250.85.11																																						
Server State	ISO	Prev Release	Running Release	Upgrade Status																																																													
Standby	<input type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_9.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso	7.6.0_18.1.0	9.0.0_9.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:12:00 UTC																																																													
Active	<input type="checkbox"/> 872-2472-102-9.0.0_9.1.0-cmp-x86_64.iso	7.6.0_18.1.0	9.0.0_9.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 13:02:02 UTC																																																													
Active	<input type="checkbox"/> 872-2474-102-9.0.0_9.1.0-mpe-li-x86_64.iso	7.6.2_1.1.0	9.0.0_9.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:53:55 UTC																																																													
Force Standby	<input type="checkbox"/> Error			Error: could not spawn ssh to 10.250.85.11																																																													
17 <input type="checkbox"/>	IF Upgrade fails	<p>The following indication is shown if a upgrade fails:</p> <div><div>System Maintenance</div><div>Columns Filters Operations</div><div><div><input type="checkbox"/> Name Appl Type IP Server State</div><div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Appl Type <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Server State <input type="checkbox"/> ISO <input type="checkbox"/> Prev Release <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Running Release <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Upgrade Status</div><div>Upgrade Status</div></div><table><tbody><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td><td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>slak-cmp-a</td><td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td><td>10.250.85.7</td><td>Standby</td><td></td><td>d:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:12:00</td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>slak-cmp-b</td><td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td><td>10.250.85.8</td><td>Active</td><td></td><td>d:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 13:02:02</td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>slak-mpe-02</td><td>MPE</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>d:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:53:55</td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>slak-mpe-02a</td><td>MPE</td><td>10.250.85.10</td><td>Active</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>slak-mpe-02b</td><td>MPE</td><td>10.250.85.11</td><td>Force Standby</td><td>7.6.2_1.1.0</td><td>Failed:Unknown status</td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>slak-mpe-03</td><td>MPE</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>slak-mpe-03a</td><td>MPE</td><td>10.250.85.13</td><td>Standby</td><td>7.6.2_1.1.0</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 00:55:27</td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>slak-mpe-03b</td><td>MPE</td><td>10.250.85.14</td><td>Active</td><td>7.6.2_1.1.0</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/09/2012 23:33:06</td></tr></tbody></table></div> <p>In this case, ssh to the server and view the upgrade log to determine the error.</p> <pre>tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <p>Correct the error, and re-try the upgrade. Or call Oracle support.</p>	<input type="checkbox"/>	CMP Site1 Cluster	CMP Site1 Cluster					<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-cmp-a	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.250.85.7	Standby		d:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:12:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-cmp-b	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.250.85.8	Active		d:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 13:02:02	<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-02	MPE				d:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:53:55	<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-02a	MPE	10.250.85.10	Active			<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-02b	MPE	10.250.85.11	Force Standby	7.6.2_1.1.0	Failed:Unknown status	<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-03	MPE					<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-03a	MPE	10.250.85.13	Standby	7.6.2_1.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 00:55:27	<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-03b	MPE	10.250.85.14	Active	7.6.2_1.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/09/2012 23:33:06
<input type="checkbox"/>	CMP Site1 Cluster	CMP Site1 Cluster																																																															
<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-cmp-a	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.250.85.7	Standby		d:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:12:00																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-cmp-b	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.250.85.8	Active		d:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 13:02:02																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-02	MPE				d:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 15:53:55																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-02a	MPE	10.250.85.10	Active																																																													
<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-02b	MPE	10.250.85.11	Force Standby	7.6.2_1.1.0	Failed:Unknown status																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-03	MPE																																																															
<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-03a	MPE	10.250.85.13	Standby	7.6.2_1.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/10/2012 00:55:27																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	slak-mpe-03b	MPE	10.250.85.14	Active	7.6.2_1.1.0	Completed:upgrade was completed at 10/09/2012 23:33:06																																																											

Step	Procedure	Result
18 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: upgraded MPE server(s), Verify upgrade success	<p>After upgrade shows Completed, ssh session to upgraded server(s):</p> <pre># getPolicyRev 9.x.0_x.x.x # tail /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log 1343413625:: UPGRADE IS COMPLETE 1343413625:: 1343413625:: Waiting for reboot 1343413625::DEBUG: ADDING VAR: UPGRADE_STATUS = SUCCESS 1343413625::DEBUG: ADDING VAR: UPGRADE_COMPLETED = 07/27/2012 18:27:05 UTC 1343413625:: Updating platform revision file... 1343413625:: 1343413625:: 1343413625:: A reboot of the server is required. 1343413625:: The server will be rebooted in 10 seconds # ha.mystate resourceId role node lastUpdate DbReplication Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.003 VIP Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.037 QP Stby C3691.123 0727:143329.774 DbReplication_old Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.104</pre> <p>NOTE: the state for some services may be OOS for a couple of minutes after upgrade.</p> <p>Do not proceed until status shows Stby for all services.</p>
19 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify Replication	<p>Once upgraded, the server will get the session data from the Active MPE server via audit. Run this command to monitor completion of this data transfer. It may take several minutes, if there is lot of session data.</p> <pre># inetstat</pre> <p>Do not proceed until status shows Audit is complete.</p>
20 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Remove Forced Standby	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select checkbox for Standby MRE server at the site and select:</p> <p>Operation → Cancel Force Standby</p> <p>Confirm that status on the form is updated to Standby.</p> <p>This step will allow the server to become Active. Active MPE is un-affected. Alarms are expected.</p>

Step	Procedure	Result
21 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Alarms and Reports	System Wide Reports → Active Alarms Confirm if any alarms are unexpected. NOTE: Some Alarms have a 30 minute auto clearing time. System Wide Reports → KPI DashBoard Compare to pre-upgrade collected reports. Policy Server → Configuration → Policy Server → Reports Compare to pre-upgrade collected reports. Policy Server → Configuration → Policy Server → System Confirm status
22 <input type="checkbox"/>	IF Verify Step fails - Backout	If needed, fallback to 7.5/7.5 server: See Procedure of this document for Backout of a Fully Upgraded Cluster.
23 <input type="checkbox"/>	MPE cluster is upgraded	MPE cluster is upgraded.
24 <input type="checkbox"/>	REPEAT Above steps for next MPE cluster	If Clusters are being upgraded one-at-a-time, then procede with next cluster: MPE Cluster _____ Add rows as needed for all MPEs at a site.
25 <input type="checkbox"/>	Recommended Soak Period	It is Recommended to let the new release soak for a period of time, to view stability and traffic/policy behavior is as expected.
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

6.3 Upgrade Site MRA Clusters

This procedure will upgrade an MRA cluster at a site.

It can be applied before or after the Upgrade of the MPEs at a site.

This section may be replicated or moved to adjust for the customer choice of upgrade order of MPEs and MRAs.

NOTES:

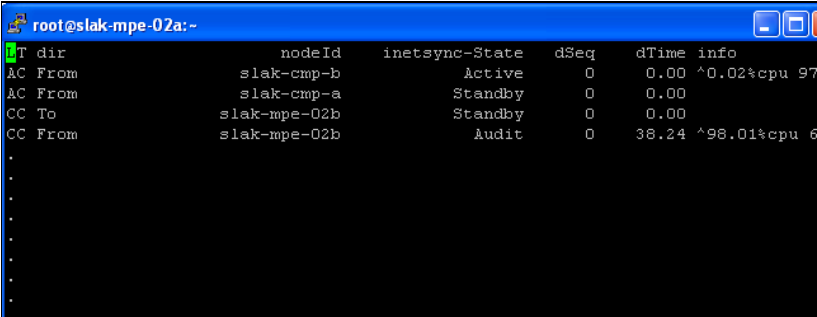
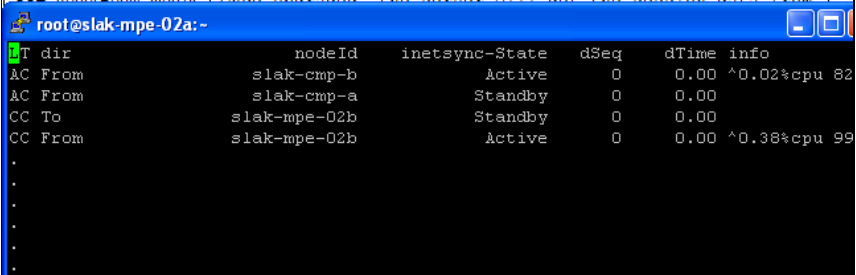
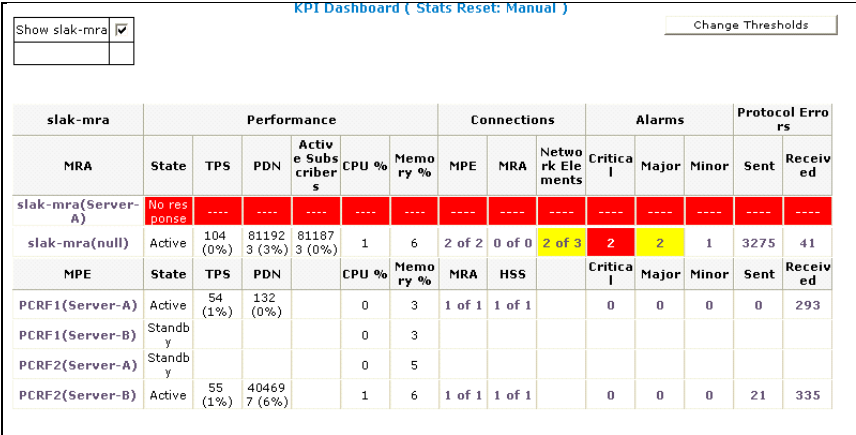
- CMPs must be upgraded before executing this procedure.
- Application software is previously deployed to the upgrade directory on the servers at the site (see pre-upgrade procedure)
- This procedure will use the Upgrade Manager functionality on the CMP GUI to perform the upgrade of the MRA cluster.

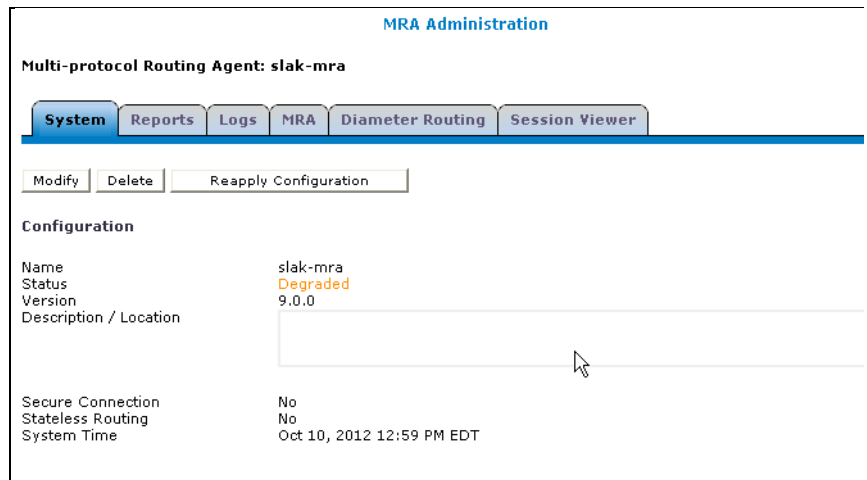
6.3.1 Procedure 17: Upgrade Site MRA

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Health Checks	GUI: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check Active Alarms • (Optional) reset MRA/MPE counters to make a baseline • Check KPI Dashboard (take a snap shot) • Verify current call rates to compare after upgrade

Step	Procedure	Result
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Open ssh session to Active CMP server at Primary site 1. Access the login prompt. 2. Log into the server as the root user	<pre>login: root</pre> <pre>Password: <enter password></pre> <p>This session will be used for ssh to the MRA servers to verify status. Keep this window open.</p>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Display Upgrade status of selected site	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Wait for the form to populate. Select Filter for Appl Type = MRA, to display only MRAs (option). Verify information for the MRAs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Current Release installed • Upgrade status • Active/Standby status NOTE: If the Upgrade status is reporting an Error, it may be needed to select: Operation → Push Script to get the current status from the server.
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Force Standby on standby MRA	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Select the checkbox for the Standby MRA server at the site to be upgraded, and select: Operation → Force Standby Confirm that status on the form is updated. This step will prevent the server from becoming Active. The Active MRA is un-affected. Active MRA Server will report Alarm 31228.
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade for Force Standby MRA	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Select the checkbox for the Force Standby MRA server at the site and select: Operation → Start Upgrade NOTE: The 9.x MRA software image (ISO) should have previously been copied to the /var/TKLC/upgrade directory on the server, and this should be the only image in this directory.

Step	Procedure	Result																																				
6	<div><div></div><div>Wait for Upgrade to process</div><div>This step will take 20 minute or more, and the server will boot during this time.</div></div>	<div>Monitor Upgrade Progress.</div> <div>1. Follow status on the Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance form: Upgrade Status</div> <div><table><tr><td>CHP Site1 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.85.25</td><td>Standby</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>8.0.0_19.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>On</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 17:37:43 U</td></tr><tr><td>CHP Site1 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.85.26</td><td>Active</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>8.0.0_19.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>On</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 16:56:08 U</td></tr><tr><td>CHP Site2 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.84.25</td><td>Active</td><td>Unknown</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>Off</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/11/2012 15:00:20 U</td></tr><tr><td>CHP Site2 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.84.26</td><td>Force Standby</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>Off</td><td>InProgress: Running APP_DISABLE...</td></tr></table></div> <div>The Upgrade status will proceed through several status messages.</div> <div>2. Optional: ssh to server, run</div> <div><pre># tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre></div> <div>NOTE: The following error messages are seen when the server is re-booting:</div> <div><div>Error: could not spawn ssh to 10.250.84.26</div><div>Error:SSH connection timedout to host 10.250.84.26</div></div> <div>3. After the server re-boots, Confirm that status on the GUI form is Completed.</div> <div><div>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 18:23:53 UTC</div></div>	CHP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.25	Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 17:37:43 U	CHP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.26	Active	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 16:56:08 U	CHP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.25	Active	Unknown	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/11/2012 15:00:20 U	CHP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.26	Force Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	InProgress: Running APP_DISABLE...
CHP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.25	Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 17:37:43 U																														
CHP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.26	Active	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 16:56:08 U																														
CHP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.25	Active	Unknown	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/11/2012 15:00:20 U																														
CHP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.26	Force Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	InProgress: Running APP_DISABLE...																														
7	<div><div></div><div>SSH: Verify upgrade success</div></div>	<div>After upgrade shows Completed, ssh session to upgraded server(s):</div> <div><pre># getPolicyRev 9.x.0_x.x.x # tail /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log 1343413625:: UPGRADE IS COMPLETE 1343413625:: 1343413625:: Waiting for reboot 1343413625::DEBUG: ADDING VAR: UPGRADE_STATUS = SUCCESS 1343413625::DEBUG: ADDING VAR: UPGRADE_COMPLETED = 07/27/2012 18:27:05 UTC 1343413625:: Updating platform revision file... 1343413625:: 1343413625:: 1343413625:: A reboot of the server is required. 1343413625:: The server will be rebooted in 10 seconds # ha.mystate resourceId role node lastUpdate DbReplication Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.003 VIP Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.037 QP Stby C3691.123 0727:143329.774 DbReplication_old Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.104</pre></div> <div>NOTE: the state for some services may be OOS for a couple of minutes after upgrade.</div> <div>Do not proceed until status shows Stby for all services.</div>																																				

Step	Procedure	Result
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify Replication of session data	<p>Once upgraded, the server will get the session data from the Active MPE server via audit. Run this command to monitor completion of this data transfer. It may take several minutes, if there is lot of session data.</p> <pre># inetstat</pre> <p>Audit state</p>  <p>Audit Completed State</p>  <p><i>Do not proceed until status shows that Audit is complete.</i></p>
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify KPI Dashboard	<p>System Wide Reports → KPI Dashboard</p> <p>In the following example, slak-mra Server B is on 7.5 and Active.</p> <p>slak-mra Server A is 9.x and Force Standby. This is expected.</p> <p>(MPEs are previously upgraded to 9.x.)</p> 

Step	Procedure	Result														
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Cause Switchover to Upgraded Server <i>Service Affecting – up to several seconds of traffic impact is possible</i>	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Select the checkbox for the partially upgraded (mixed 7.5/9.x) cluster, and select - Operation → Switch ForceStandby														
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Reapply MRA Configuration	MRA → Configuration → <cluster> → System Select Reapply Configuration  <p>The screenshot shows the 'MRA Administration' interface. At the top, it says 'Multi-protocol Routing Agent: slak-mra'. Below this is a navigation bar with tabs: 'System' (selected), 'Reports', 'Logs', 'MRA', 'Diameter Routing', and 'Session Viewer'. Under the 'System' tab, there are three buttons: 'Modify', 'Delete', and 'Reapply Configuration'. Below the buttons is a 'Configuration' section with the following details:</p> <table><tr><td>Name</td><td>slak-mra</td></tr><tr><td>Status</td><td>Degraded</td></tr><tr><td>Version</td><td>9.0.0</td></tr><tr><td>Description / Location</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Secure Connection</td><td>No</td></tr><tr><td>Stateless Routing</td><td>No</td></tr><tr><td>System Time</td><td>Oct 10, 2012 12:59 PM EDT</td></tr></table>	Name	slak-mra	Status	Degraded	Version	9.0.0	Description / Location		Secure Connection	No	Stateless Routing	No	System Time	Oct 10, 2012 12:59 PM EDT
Name	slak-mra															
Status	Degraded															
Version	9.0.0															
Description / Location																
Secure Connection	No															
Stateless Routing	No															
System Time	Oct 10, 2012 12:59 PM EDT															

Step

Procedure

Result

12

GUI: Verify KPI Dashboard show the transition

System Wide Reports → KPI Dashboard

The following state transitions for the MPA servers are expected, over several seconds. In this example, ServerA is 9.x and ServerB 7.5.

KPI Dashboard (Stats Reset: Manual)

Show slak-mra

Change Thresholds

slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors	
MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received
slak-mra(Server-A)	Active	0 (0%)	811874 (1%)	811874 (4%)	3	7	2 of 2	0 of 0	1 of 3	2	3	2	0	0
slak-mra(null)	Active	0 (0%)	811874 (1%)	811874 (4%)	3	7	2 of 2	0 of 0	1 of 3	2	3	2	0	0
MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received
PCRF1(Server-A)	Active	0 (0%)	132 (0%)		3	3	2 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	0	0	293
PCRF1(Server-B)	Standby				1	3								
PCRF2(Server-A)	Standby				0	5								
PCRF2(Server-B)	Active	52 (1%)	404697 (6%)		4	6	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	0	21	335

KPI Dashboard (Stats Reset: Manual)

Show slak-mra

Change Thresholds

slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors	
MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received
slak-mra(Server-A)	Active	48 (0%)	812197 (1%)	812192 (4%)	1	7	2 of 2	0 of 0	3 of 3	3	3	1	389	0
MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received
PCRF1(Server-A)	Active	37 (0%)	302 (0%)		0	3	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	1	0	515
PCRF1(Server-B)	Standby				0	3								
PCRF2(Server-A)	Standby				2	5								
PCRF2(Server-B)	Active	29 (0%)	404819 (6%)		2	6	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	1	21	451

KPI Dashboard (Stats Reset: Manual)

Show slak-mra

Change Thresholds

slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors	
MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received
slak-mra(Server-A)	Active	77 (0%)	812397 (1%)	812392 (4%)	1	7	2 of 2	0 of 0	3 of 3	2	3	1	569	0
slak-mra(null)	No Data				0	0								
MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received
PCRF1(Server-A)	Active	39 (0%)	408 (0%)		0	3	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	1	0	628
PCRF1(Server-B)	Standby				0	3								
PCRF2(Server-A)	Standby				4	5								
PCRF2(Server-B)	Active	29 (0%)	404914 (6%)		2	6	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	1	21	569

Step

13

Procedure

GUI: Verify KPI Dashboard

Result

SystemWideReports → KPI Dashboard

Compare to pre-upgrade KPI Dashboard.

If possible, confirm with customer that traffic is normal for Network element connected devices.

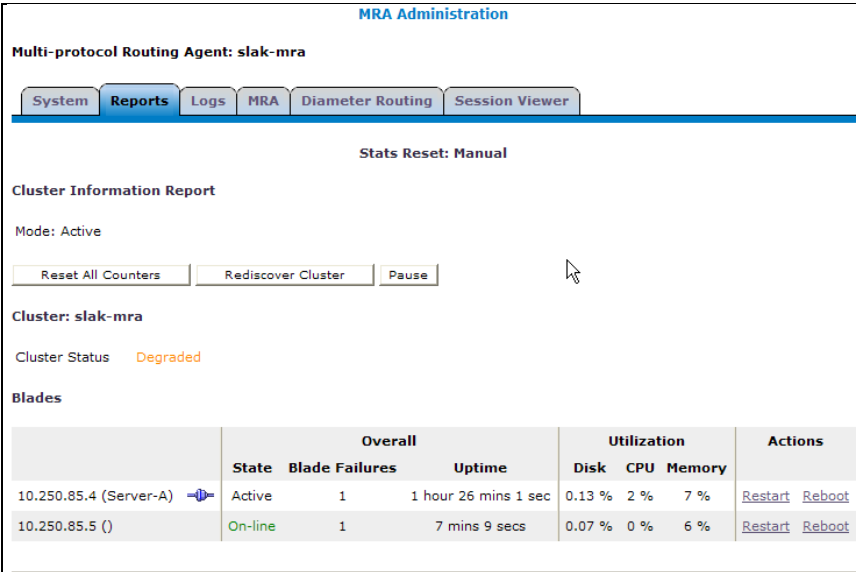
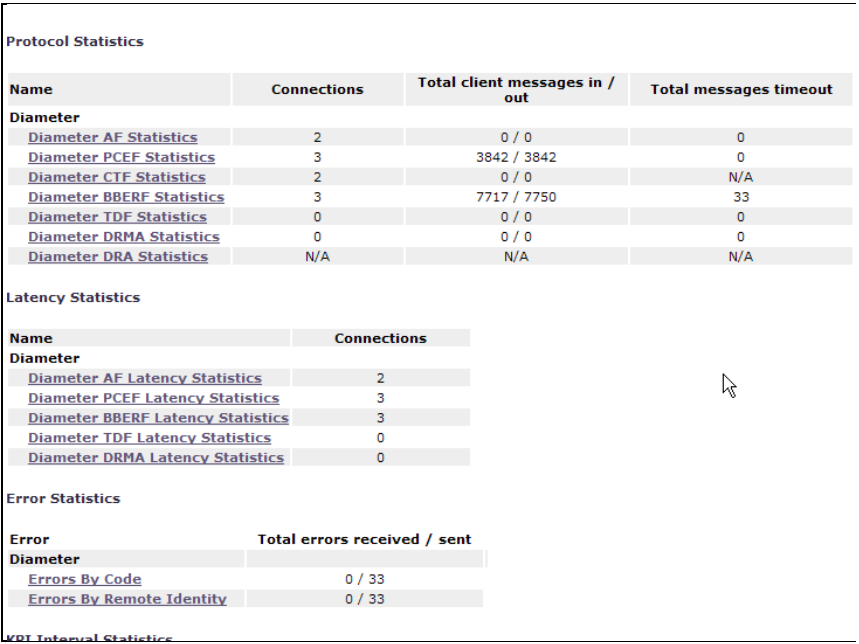
Show slak-mra

☒

KPI Dashboard (Stats Reset: Manual)

Change Thresholds

slak-mra		Performance					Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors	
MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received
slak-mra(Server-A)	Active	29 (0%)	1024401 (2%)	1024398 (5%)	0	7	2 of 2	0 of 0	2 of 2	1	1	0	35	0
slak-mra(null)	No Data				0	0								
MPE		State	TPS	PDN	CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received
slak-mpe-02(Server-A)	Standby				0	6								
slak-mpe-02(Server-B)	Active	19 (0%)	14695 (0%)		0	6	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	1	0	31
slak-mpe-03(Server-A)	Standby				0	6								
slak-mpe-03(Server-B)	Active	19 (0%)	7571 (0%)		3	6	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	1	0	4

Step	Procedure	Result
14 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify MPE Cluster Traffic	<p>MRA → Configuration → <cluster> → Reports</p> <p>Verify that Upgraded server is Active and other server is On-line</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'MRA Administration' interface. Under the 'Reports' tab, the 'Cluster Information Report' shows 'Mode: Active' and buttons for 'Reset All Counters', 'Rediscover Cluster', and 'Pause'. Below, the 'Cluster: slak-mra' section shows 'Cluster Status' as 'Degraded'. The 'Blades' table lists two servers: 10.250.85.4 (Server-A) with 'Active' state and 10.250.85.5 with 'On-line' state. Both show 1 blade failure and uptime. Utilization for both is low (Disk 0.13%, CPU 2%, Memory 7% for Server-A; Disk 0.07%, CPU 0%, Memory 6% for Server-B). Actions for each include 'Restart' and 'Reboot' links.</p> <p>Verify that the Reports show server is processing traffic.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows three sections of statistics. 'Protocol Statistics' includes a table for Diameter protocols with columns for Name, Connections, Total client messages in/out, and Total messages timeout. 'Latency Statistics' shows a table for Diameter latency with columns for Name and Connections. 'Error Statistics' shows a table for Diameter errors with columns for Error, Total errors received/sent, Errors By Code, and Errors By Remote Identity.</p>
15 <input type="checkbox"/>	IF Verify Steps fail: Backout	<p>If needed, fallback to 7.5 server:</p> <p>See section for Backout of Partial Upgraded Cluster.</p>
16 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade second MRA in Cluster	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select check box for current Force Standby MRA server at the site, and select –</p> <p>Operation → Start Upgrade</p>

Step	Procedure	Result																																				
17 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Wait for Upgrade to process</p> <p>This step will take 20 minute or more, and the server will boot during this time.</p>	<p>Wait for Upgrade to proceed.</p> <p>Monitor Upgrade Progress, if desired:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Follow status on the Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance form: Upgrade Status <table><tr><td>CHP Site1 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.85.25</td><td>Standby</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>8.0.0_19.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>On</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 17:37:43 U</td></tr><tr><td>CHP Site1 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.85.26</td><td>Active</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>8.0.0_19.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>On</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 16:56:08 U</td></tr><tr><td>CHP Site2 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.84.25</td><td>Active</td><td>Unknown</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>Off</td><td>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/11/2012 15:00:20 U</td></tr><tr><td>CHP Site2 Cluster</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>10.250.84.26</td><td>Force Standby</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>7.6.0_18.1.0</td><td>On</td><td>Off</td><td>InProgress: Running APP_DISABLE...</td></tr></table> <p>The Upgrade status will proceed through several status messages.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Optional: ssh to server, run <pre># tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Optional: Login to Server Console via the iLo of the server, and monitor the console output to confirm upgrade progress <p>NOTE: The following error messages are seen when the server is re-booting:</p> <div>Error: could not spawn ssh to 10.250.84.26</div> <div>Error:SSH connection timedout to host 10.250.84.26</div> <ol style="list-style-type: none">After the server re-boots, Confirm that status on the GUI form is Completed. <div>Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 18:23:53 UTC</div>	CHP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.25	Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 17:37:43 U	CHP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.26	Active	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 16:56:08 U	CHP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.25	Active	Unknown	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/11/2012 15:00:20 U	CHP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.26	Force Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	InProgress: Running APP_DISABLE...
CHP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.25	Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 17:37:43 U																														
CHP Site1 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.85.26	Active	7.6.0_18.1.0	8.0.0_19.1.0	On	On	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/13/2012 16:56:08 U																														
CHP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.25	Active	Unknown	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	Completed:upgrade was completed at 07/11/2012 15:00:20 U																														
CHP Site2 Cluster	Unspecified	10.250.84.26	Force Standby	7.6.0_18.1.0	7.6.0_18.1.0	On	Off	InProgress: Running APP_DISABLE...																														
18 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>SSH: upgraded MPE server(s), Verify upgrade success</p>	<p>After upgrade shows Completed, ssh session to upgraded server:</p> <pre># getPolicyRev 9.x.0_x.x.x # tail /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log 1343413625:: UPGRADE IS COMPLETE 1343413625:: 1343413625:: Waiting for reboot 1343413625::DEBUG: ADDING VAR: UPGRADE_STATUS = SUCCESS 1343413625::DEBUG: ADDING VAR: UPGRADE_COMPLETED = 07/27/2012 18:27:05 UTC 1343413625:: Updating platform revision file... 1343413625:: 1343413625:: 1343413625:: A reboot of the server is required. 1343413625:: The server will be rebooted in 10 seconds # ha.mystate resourceId role node lastUpdate DbReplication Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.003 VIP Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.037 QP Stby C3691.123 0727:143329.774 DbReplication_old Stby C3691.123 0727:143326.104</pre> <p>NOTE: the state for some services may be OOS for a couple of minutes after upgrade.</p> <p>Do not proceed until status shows Stby for all services</p>																																				

Step	Procedure	Result																																																																																																																																							
19 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify Replication	<p>Once upgraded, the server will get the session data from the Active MPE server via audit. Run this command to monitor completion of this data transfer. It may take several minutes, if there is lot of session data.</p> <pre># inetstat</pre> <p>Do not proceed until status shows Audit is complete.</p>																																																																																																																																							
20 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify KPI Dashboard Status	<p>System Wide Reports → KPI Dashboard</p> <p>Example – Upgraded server now shows force standby</p> <div><div>KPI Dashboard (Stats Reset: Manual)</div><div><div>Show slak-mra<input checked="" type="checkbox"/></div><div>Change Thresholds</div></div><table><thead><tr><th>slak-mra</th><th colspan="6">Performance</th><th colspan="3">Connections</th><th colspan="3">Alarms</th><th colspan="2">Protocol Errors</th></tr><tr><th>MRA</th><th>State</th><th>TPS</th><th>PDN</th><th>Active Subscribers</th><th>CPU %</th><th>Memory %</th><th>MPE</th><th>MRA</th><th>Network Elements</th><th>Critical</th><th>Major</th><th>Minor</th><th>Sent</th><th>Received</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>slak-mra(Server-A)</td><td>Active</td><td>101 (0%)</td><td>81257 (1%)</td><td>81257 (4%)</td><td>0</td><td>7</td><td>2 of 2</td><td>0 of 0</td><td>0 of 3</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>569</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mra(Server-B)</td><td>Forced Standby</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>7</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><th>MPE</th><th>State</th><th>TPS</th><th>PDN</th><th></th><th>CPU %</th><th>Memory %</th><th>MRA</th><th>HSS</th><th></th><th>Critical</th><th>Major</th><th>Minor</th><th>Sent</th><th>Received</th></tr><tr><td>PCRf1(Server-A)</td><td>Active</td><td>54 (1%)</td><td>477 (0%)</td><td></td><td>1</td><td>3</td><td>1 of 1</td><td>1 of 1</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>628</td></tr><tr><td>PCRf1(Server-B)</td><td>Standby</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>3</td><td>3</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>PCRf2(Server-A)</td><td>Standby</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td><td>5</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>PCRf2(Server-B)</td><td>Active</td><td>55 (1%)</td><td>40500 (6%)</td><td></td><td>4</td><td>6</td><td>1 of 1</td><td>1 of 1</td><td></td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>21</td><td>569</td></tr></tbody></table></div>	slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors		MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received	slak-mra(Server-A)	Active	101 (0%)	81257 (1%)	81257 (4%)	0	7	2 of 2	0 of 0	0 of 3	0	1	1	569	0	slak-mra(Server-B)	Forced Standby				0	7									MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received	PCRf1(Server-A)	Active	54 (1%)	477 (0%)		1	3	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	1	0	628	PCRf1(Server-B)	Standby				3	3									PCRf2(Server-A)	Standby				0	5									PCRf2(Server-B)	Active	55 (1%)	40500 (6%)		4	6	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	1	21	569
slak-mra	Performance						Connections			Alarms			Protocol Errors																																																																																																																												
MRA	State	TPS	PDN	Active Subscribers	CPU %	Memory %	MPE	MRA	Network Elements	Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received																																																																																																																											
slak-mra(Server-A)	Active	101 (0%)	81257 (1%)	81257 (4%)	0	7	2 of 2	0 of 0	0 of 3	0	1	1	569	0																																																																																																																											
slak-mra(Server-B)	Forced Standby				0	7																																																																																																																																			
MPE	State	TPS	PDN		CPU %	Memory %	MRA	HSS		Critical	Major	Minor	Sent	Received																																																																																																																											
PCRf1(Server-A)	Active	54 (1%)	477 (0%)		1	3	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	1	0	628																																																																																																																											
PCRf1(Server-B)	Standby				3	3																																																																																																																																			
PCRf2(Server-A)	Standby				0	5																																																																																																																																			
PCRf2(Server-B)	Active	55 (1%)	40500 (6%)		4	6	1 of 1	1 of 1		0	0	1	21	569																																																																																																																											
21 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Remove Forced Standby (second MRA in the cluster)	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select check box for just-upgraded Force Standby MRA server at the site and Select - Operation → Cancel Force Standby</p> <p>Confirm that status on the form is updated to Standby.</p>																																																																																																																																							
22 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify MRA activity at Upgraded site MRA cluster	<p>Perform health checks as in step 1 of this procedure.</p> <p>View Alarms, KPI Dashboard, and MRA reports to verify that the system is healthy.</p> <p>Recommend to make a screen capture of post-upgrade status for these forms.</p>																																																																																																																																							
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED																																																																																																																																									

6.3.2 Procedure 18: 9.x Replication Activation

For Release 9.x, there is an improved Replication method that needs to be activated after the upgrade. It is recommended that this is done as part of the planned Upgrade activities.

After an upgrade from 7.5 to 9.x, the Policy System will be using “Legacy Replication”. This is the Replication method between servers that was supported in release 7.5. This Replication method will be disabled, and the new Replication method enabled.

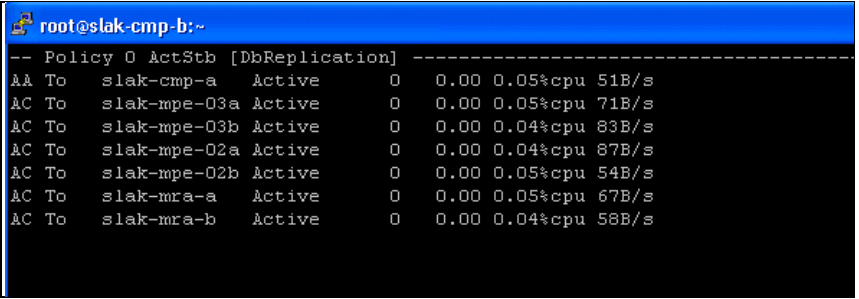
This Activation should be performed for all servers in the Policy system in a single maintenance window. A roll back procedure is also provided.

IMPORTANT: This is only performed after all servers in the network have been upgraded.

NOTES:

- All servers in the Policy system are previously upgraded to the 9.x Release
- This procedure will use the Upgrade Manager functionality on the CMP GUI to perform the replication feature Activation.

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Open CMP GUI	Login to CMP GUI as Administrator (or as Upgrade Engineer, if an account is defined for this).
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Open ssh session to Active CMP server <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Access the login prompt. Log into the server as the root user 	<pre>login: root Password: <enter password></pre> <p>This session will be used for executing command line activities.</p>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Confirm Upgrade status of all sites and servers	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Confirm in the Running Release column that all servers in the network are upgraded to 9.x.
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Change Replication mode: MRAs (One cluster at a time)	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Select MRA cluster _____ 1. Select the checkbox for the Standby MRA server , and execute: Operation → Upgrade Completion 2. Select the checkbox for the Active MRA server , and execute: Operation → Upgrade Completion
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: MRA Active Server	Verify that the new Replication is active on the cluster: <pre># irepstat</pre>
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Repeat Steps above for each MRA cluster in the Network (One cluster at a time)	Select another MRA cluster _____ Perform steps above (Repeat this row of the table for each MRA cluster in the network.)
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Change Replication mode: MPEs (One cluster at a time)	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Select MPE cluster _____ 1. Select the checkbox for the Standby MPE server , and execute: Operation → Upgrade Completion 2. Select the checkbox for the Active MPE server , and execute: Operation → Upgrade Completion
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Change Replication mode: Secondary site CMPs	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Select Secondary-Site CMP cluster _____ 1. Select the checkbox for the Standby CMP server , and execute: Operation → Upgrade Completion 2. Select the checkbox for the Active CMP server , and execute: Operation → Upgrade Completion
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Change Replication mode: Active site CMPs	Select CMP cluster _____ 1. Select the checkbox for the Standby CMP server , and execute: Operation → Upgrade Completion 2. Select the checkbox for the Active CMP server , and execute: Operation → Upgrade Completion
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Active Alarms	System Wide Reports → Active Alarms All Upgrade related alarms should be cleared.

Step	Procedure	Result
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP, confirm that replication to MPE/MRAs is Active/Standby	<pre># irepstat</pre>  <pre> -- Policy 0 ActStb [DbReplication] ----- AA To slak-cmp-a Active 0 0.00 0.05%cpu 51B/s AC To slak-mpe-03a Active 0 0.00 0.05%cpu 71B/s AC To slak-mpe-03b Active 0 0.00 0.04%cpu 83B/s AC To slak-mpe-02a Active 0 0.00 0.04%cpu 87B/s AC To slak-mpe-02b Active 0 0.00 0.05%cpu 54B/s AC To slak-mra-a Active 0 0.00 0.05%cpu 67B/s AC To slak-mra-b Active 0 0.00 0.04%cpu 58B/s </pre>
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP, confirm that exclusions are removed	<p>Verify that the Replication exclusions “LongParam,AppEventDef” are removed from the NodeInfo Table and output similar to the following is shown:</p> <pre># iqt -p NodeInfo</pre> <pre> nodeId nodeName hostName nodeCapability inhibitRepPlans siteId excludeTables A1089.051 tb4-cmp-a tb4-cmp-a,10.240.239.36 Active Unspecified A1089.106 tb4-cmp-b tb4-cmp-b,10.240.239.x4 Active Unspecified C0010.058 tb4-mpe-01b tb4-mpe-01b,10.240.239.51 Active Unspecified C0010.202 tb4-mpe-01a tb4-mpe-01a,10.240.239.x3 Active Unspecified C0630.121 tb4-mpe-02b tb4-mpe-02b,10.240.239.50 Active Unspecified C0630.206 tb4-mpe-02a tb4-mpe-02a,10.240.239.x2 Active Unspecified C1410.098 tb4-mra-a tb4-mra-a,10.240.239.38 Active Unspecified C1410.135 tb4-mra-b tb4-mra-b,10.240.239.x6 Active Unspecified </pre>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

7. POST UPGRADE ACTIVITIES

To complete an upgrade, complete the procedures in the section 8.1.

7.1 Verify System Upgrade

This procedure is used to verify that the Policy Management 9.x software upgrade was successful.

7.1.1 Procedure 19: Verify System Upgrade

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify System	
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Access the login prompt.2. Log into the server as the root user on the iLO or RMM.	<pre>login: root Password: <enter password></pre>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: View Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance	Add additional Verify steps, based on network specifics and Operator need.
4 <input type="checkbox"/>		
5 <input type="checkbox"/>		
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

7.2 Additional Instructions

Refer to both the Release Notes for the target release and the Oracle Customer Care Method of Procedure to determine if additional instructions are to be followed to successfully complete the Policy Management 9.x software Upgrade for servers running specific Oracle Applications.

8. BACKOUT (ROLLBACK)

To complete a backout, complete the procedures in this section.

If the Upgrade has succeeded, but an issue is found after upgrade that is causing network impact, then the system can be backed out (rolled back) to the previous release.

NOTE: If an Upgrade fails, it will automatically attempt to backout.

8.1 Backout Order

The backout order is the reverse of the upgrade order:

1. Backout the MRA and MPE clusters
2. Backout the secondary CMP cluster
3. Backout the primary CMP cluster.
 - During a backout, it is important to control what version of the software is currently active. This control needs to be maintained even if there are unexpected failures. This MOP uses the ‘forced standby’ flag to ensure that a server can’t become active until the flag is cleared. Setting and clearing the forced standby flag is critical to having an orderly backout. Failing to follow the conventions can lead to loss of service and even possible data corruption.
 - In the case of an MPE/MRA, the upgrade/backout is NOT complete until the operator does a configuration push from the CMP. The MRA/MPE can still operate – to a degree – but it is not fully functional.

8.1.1 Procedure 20: Backout Partially-Upgraded Cluster

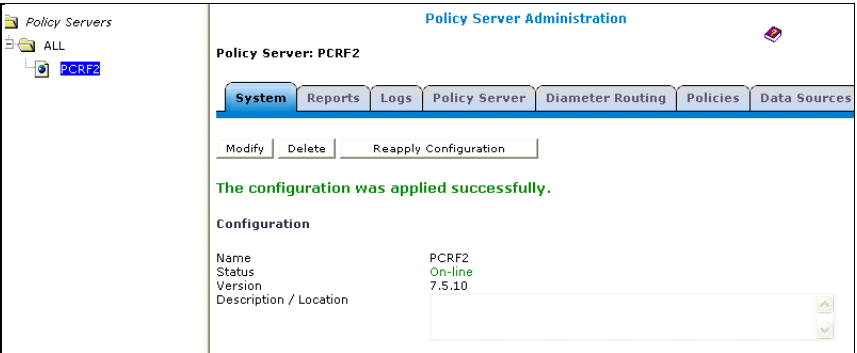
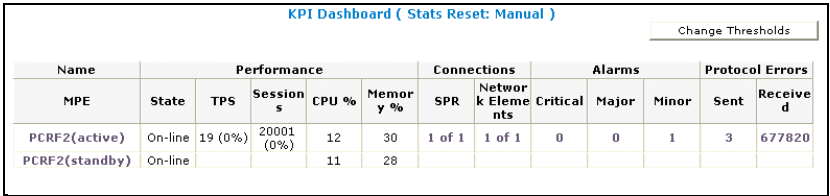
This procedure is used to backout a cluster that has been partially upgraded.

Expected Pre-conditions:

- Primary Active CMP is on 9.x
- Cluster is any of MPE, MRA or Secondary CMP
- One server of target cluster is on 9.x, and Active
- One server of target cluster is on 7.5.x and Force Standby
- At the end of this procedure, both servers of the target cluster will be on 7.5.x, and Active/Standby.

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager – Verify cluster status	Upgrade Manager → System Management Confirm status of the cluster to be backed out.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager. Switch active server back to 7.5.x Service Affecting for MPE/MRA	IF cluster 9.x server to backout is currently Active -- Execute this step to make 9.x server Force Standby, and make the 7.5.x server Active. [IF 9.x server is already Force Standby, skip this step.] IMPORTANT: the current MRA or MPE session data is dropped in this step. The 7.5.x MRA/MPE will start from a clean data set. Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Select the checkbox for the partially upgraded (mixed 7.5/9.x) cluster, select - Operation → Switch ForceStandby
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager Turn off replication	NOTE: It may need to skip this step for the MRA/MPE backout. Consult TAC to confirm for this step GUI: Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance View Select Checkbox for the standby Server. Select Operation → Turn Off Replication Verify that irepstat shows as Inhibited <pre># irepstat -- Policy 0 ActStb [DbReplication] ----- ----- AC From cs-tb31-cmp-a Inhibited 0 0.00 ^ CC From cs-tb31-mpel-a Inhibited 0 0.00 ^</pre>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager – Verify cluster status	Verify 7.5.x server is Active.
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: View KPI Dashboard. Verify 7.5.x server is handling traffic	Verify steps: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • KPI Dashboard • View MRA/MPE Report IF there is a problem – Consult with My Oracle Support.

Step	Procedure	Result
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	Option 1: GUI: Upgrade Manager. Backout the 9.x server software	Choose Option 1 or Option 2: Option 1 – use the Upgrade Manager GUI tool to backout 3. GUI: Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance 4. Select Checkbox for the Server to be backed out. Current state must be Force Standby 5. Select: Operation → Backout Server backout takes several minutes, and the final step will be a re-boot of the server. 6. Verify: GUI: Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Select Operation → Push Script - Confirm Upgrade Manager now shows correct release, and - Upgrade status = Completed: backout was completed at ...
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	Option 2: SSH: Backout the target 9.x server	Option 2 – execute backout from ssh root login to target Log into the target 9.x server as root: <pre># getPolicyRev 9.x.0_xxx # cd /var/TKLC/backout # ./ugwrap --backout</pre> <p>NOTE: There are two dashes (--) before “backout”</p> <pre>Initializing Upgrade Wrapper... Executing any special platform directives Setting up application for install/upgrade Running backout_server script... Starting backout_server... Verifying that backout is possible. Current platform version: 5.0.1-72.45.0 Backing out to platform version: 4.2.4-70.90.0 compare_platform_versions (5.0.1-72.45.0, 4.2.4-70.90.0) compare with major upgrade boundary (3.0.0-60.0.0, 4.2.4-70.90.0) compare with no backout boundary (4.0.0-70.0.0, 4.2.4-70.90.0) Backout Date: 08/10/2012 02:10:24 UTC Continue backout? [y/N]:y Server backout takes several minutes.</pre> <p>After returning to prompt, verify success:</p> <pre># tail /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log Daemon is not running... 1344561040::DEBUG: lib/upgrade.sh - app_enable() - APP_ENABLE=[0] 1344561040::DEBUG: lib/upgrade.sh - app_enable() - MODE_FLAG=[--</pre>

Step	Procedure	Result
		<pre>backout] 1344561040:: Enabling applications on the server... 1344561040:: 1344561041:: 1344561042:: 1344561043:: Applications Enabled. 1344561043:: Running /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/service_conf reconfig 1344561045:: Backout is complete. A reboot of the server is now required. # shutdown -r now</pre> <p>Verify: After reboot, login and check status of server:</p> <pre># getPolicyRev 7.5_xxx # syscheck # ha.stat</pre>
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Re-Apply Configuration to MPE/MRA, if needed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If target is MPE or MRA, Check status on the System Form. If status shows Mis-Match, re-apply the configuration from the CMP GUI. For MPE: Policy Server → Configuration: System → Re-Apply Configuration For MRA: MRA → Configuration: System → Re-Apply Configuration 
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager – Cancel Force Standby	<p>GUI: Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select checkbox for the server that is Force Standby</p> <p>Operation → Cancel Force Standby</p> <p>Verify status of the server changes to Standby.</p>
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify cluster is handling traffic as normal	<p>Verify</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> KPI Dashboard  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MPE/MRA Reports Active Alarms
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

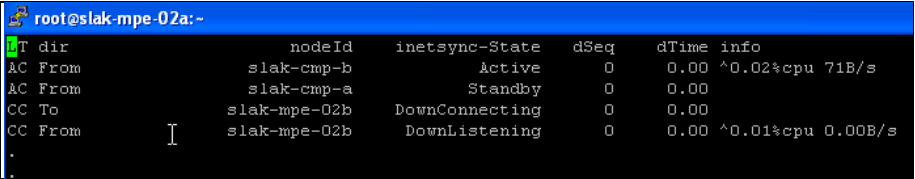
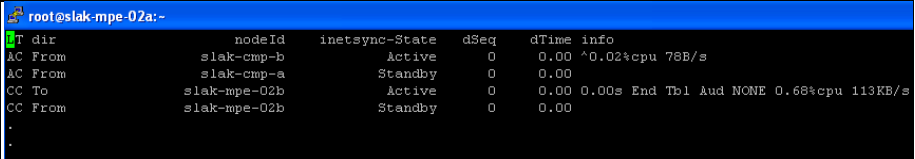
8.1.2 Procedure 21: Backout Fully Upgraded MPE/MRA Cluster

This procedure is used to backout a MPE/MRA cluster that has been fully upgraded. i.e. Both servers in the cluster are installed with 9.x and they are Active/Standby.

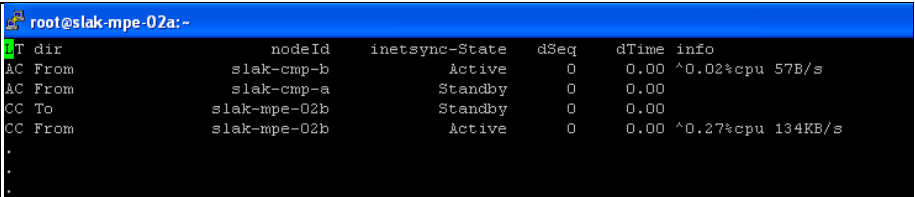
Pre-conditions:

- Primary Active CMP is on 9.x
- Cluster is any of: MPE, MRA
- One server of target cluster is on 9.x, and Active
- One server of target cluster is on 9.x and either Standby or Force Standby
- At the end of this procedure, both servers of the target cluster will be on 7.5.x, and Active/Standby.

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager Set Standby server to Force Standby (Backout first server in cluster)	IF cluster is Active/Standby, set Standby Server to Force Standby. GUI: Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance View Select Checkbox for the standby Server. Select Operation → Force Standby
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager Turn off replication	NOTE: It may need to skip this step for the MRA/MPE backout. Consult TAC to confirm for this step GUI: Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance View 1. Select Checkbox for the standby Server. 2. Select Operation → Turn Off Replication 3. Verify that irepstat shows as Inhibited <pre># irepstat -- Policy 0 ActStb [DbReplication] ----- AC From cs-tb31-cmp-a Inhibited 0 0.00 ^ CC From cs-tb31-mpel-a Inhibited 0 0.00 ^</pre>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Option 1: GUI: Upgrade Manager. Backout the 9.x server software (Backout first server in cluster)	Choose Option 1 or Option 2 below, to backout the server: Option 1 – Use the Upgrade Manager GUI tool to backout GUI: Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance View Select checkbox for the Force Standby Server to be backed out. Operation → Backout Server backout takes several minutes, and the final step will be a re-boot of the server. Verify: When backout completes, select the server and select: Operation → Push Script

Step	Procedure	Result
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Option 2: SSH: Backout the target 9.x server (Backout first server in cluster)	Option 2 – execute backout from ssh root login to target Log into the target 9.x server as root: If using ssh, execute “screen” to prevent hang-ups, and do not exit this screen session until the server reboots. <pre># screen # getPolicyRev 9.x.0_xxx # cd /var/TKLC/backout # ./ugwrap --backout</pre> NOTE: There are two dashes (--) before “backout”.. <Answer yes> Server backout takes several minutes. After the backout script completes, it is necessary to reboot the server. <pre># shutdown -r now</pre> Verify: After reboot, login and check status of server: <pre># getPolicyRev 7.5.x_x.x.x # syscheck # ha.stat</pre>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Login to active server of the cluster – Wait for Replication sync	<pre># inetstat</pre> Before Replication sync  After Replication sync  <p>Do not proceed until Replication is synced.</p>
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Re-Apply Configuration to MPE/MRA	IF target is MPE or MRA, Re-Apply the configuration from the CMP GUI. For MPE: Policy Server → Configuration: System → Re-Apply Configuration For MRA: MRA → Configuration: System → Re-Apply Configuration

Step	Procedure	Result																								
7	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> GUI: Upgrade Manager	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>If status is not shown, Select the checkbox for the current Force Standby MPE of the partially upgraded (mixed 7.5/9.x) cluster, and Select</p> <p>Operation → Push Script</p> <p>Verify the Upgrade Status:</p> <div>Completed:backout was completed at 09/29/2012 12:26:22</div>																								
8	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> GUI: Verify Alarms	<div>Active Alarms (Stats Reset: Manual)</div> <div><div>Pause</div><div>Printable Format</div><div>Save as CSV</div><div>Export PDF</div><div>Columns</div><div>Filters</div></div> <div>Display results per page: 50</div> <div>[First/Prev]1[Next/Last] Total 1 pages</div> <table><thead><tr><th>Server</th><th>Server Type</th><th>Severity</th><th>Alarm ID</th><th>Description</th><th>Time</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10</td><td>MPE</td><td>Minor</td><td>31103</td><td>DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB</td><td>09/29/2012 12:32:22 EDT</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10</td><td>MPE</td><td>Critical</td><td>31283</td><td>High availability server is offline</td><td>09/29/2012 12:29:05 EDT</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mpe-02b,1 0.250.85.11</td><td>MPE</td><td>Minor</td><td>31103</td><td>DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB</td><td>09/29/2012 12:32:23 EDT</td></tr></tbody></table>	Server	Server Type	Severity	Alarm ID	Description	Time	slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10	MPE	Minor	31103	DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB	09/29/2012 12:32:22 EDT	slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10	MPE	Critical	31283	High availability server is offline	09/29/2012 12:29:05 EDT	slak-mpe-02b,1 0.250.85.11	MPE	Minor	31103	DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB	09/29/2012 12:32:23 EDT
Server	Server Type	Severity	Alarm ID	Description	Time																					
slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10	MPE	Minor	31103	DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB	09/29/2012 12:32:22 EDT																					
slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10	MPE	Critical	31283	High availability server is offline	09/29/2012 12:29:05 EDT																					
slak-mpe-02b,1 0.250.85.11	MPE	Minor	31103	DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB	09/29/2012 12:32:23 EDT																					
9	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> Cluster is now Partially Upgraded (one server 9.x, and one server 7.5.x)	<p>The Backed out 7.5.x server is Force Standby.</p> <p>IMPORTANT: Do not remove Force Standby.</p> <p>A 9.x server and a 7.5.x cannot be Active/Standby. One must remain in the Force Standby state.</p>																								
10	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> GUI: Upgrade Manager	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Switch active server to 7.5.x</p> <p>Service Affecting for MPE/MRA</p> <p>Select the checkbox for the partially upgraded (mixed 7.5/9.x) cluster, and Select -</p> <p>Operation → Switch ForceStandby</p> <p>7.5.x server is made Active</p> <p>IMPORTANT: The current MRA or MPE state data is dropped in this step, unless the previous State Data recovery steps were performed.</p>																								
11	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> GUI: Upgrade Manager – Verify cluster status	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Verify failover is completed, and 7.5.x server is Active.</p>																								
12	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> GUI: Verify 7.5.x (Active) server is handling Traffic	<p>The backed out 7.5.x server should be handling traffic.</p> <p>Verify</p> <p>View KPI Dashboard on the GUI</p> <p>IF there is a problem – Consult with My Oracle Support.</p>																								
13	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> Option 1: GUI: Upgrade Manager.	<p>Choose Option 1 or Option 2:</p> <p>Option 1 – use the Upgrade Manager GUI tool to backout</p> <p>View Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select checkbox for the server to be backed out, current state must be Force Standby</p> <p>Operation → Backout</p> <p>Server backout takes several minutes, and the final step will be a re-boot of the server.</p> <p>Verify</p> <p>Confirm Upgrade Manager shows server of correct release</p>																								

Step	Procedure	Result
14 <input type="checkbox"/>	Option 2: SSH: Backout the target 9.x server	<p>Option 2 – execute backout from ssh root login to target</p> <p>Log into the target 9.x server as root:</p> <p>If using ssh, run the <code>screen</code> command to prevent hang-ups, and do not exit this screen session until the server reboots.</p> <pre># screen # getPolicyRev 9.x.0_xxx # cd /var/TKLC/backout # ./ugwrap --backout</pre> <p>NOTE: There are two dashes (--) before backout.</p> <p><Answer yes></p> <p>Server backout takes several minutes.</p> <pre>... mysql stopped Installing JDK with option --nomd5 No JDK backout package found, ignoring... # # shutdown -r now</pre> <p>Verify</p> <p>After reboot, login and check status of server:</p> <pre># getPolicyRev 7.5_xxx # syscheck # ha.stat</pre>
15 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Re-Apply Configuration to MPE/MRA	<p>If target is MPE or MRA, re-apply the configuration from the CMP GUI.</p> <p>For MPE: Policy Server → Configuration: System → Re-Apply Configuration</p> <p>For MRA: MRA → Configuration: System → Re-Apply Configuration</p>
16 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager – Verify Backout completed	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>If status is not show, Select the checkbox for the current Force Standby MPE of the partially upgraded (mixed 7.5/9.x) cluster, and select Operation → Push Script</p> <p>Verify the Upgrade Status:</p> <pre>Completed:backout was completed at 09/29/2012 12:26:22</pre>
17 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP – Verify replication sync	<pre># inetstat</pre>  <pre>root@slak-mpe-02a:~# root@slak-mpe-02a:~# inetstat dir nodeId inetsync-State dSeq dTime info AC From slak-cmp-b Active 0 0.00 ^0.02%cpu 57B/s AC From slak-cmp-a Standby 0 0.00 CC To slak-mpe-02b Standby 0 0.00 CC From slak-mpe-02b Active 0 0.00 ^0.27%cpu 134KB/s .</pre>

Step	Procedure	Result
18 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager – Verify Backout completed	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Select Force Standby Server, and select Operation → Cancel Force Standby Verify the server state becomes Standby.
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

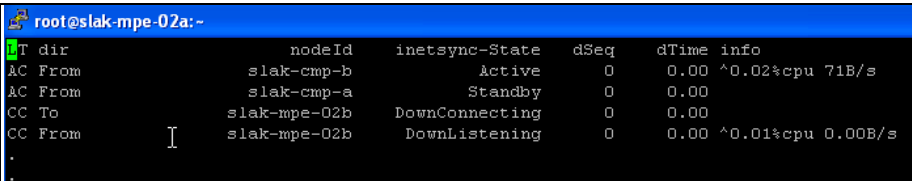
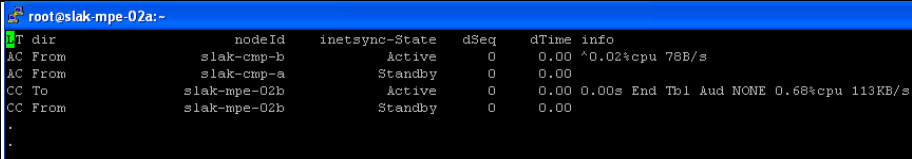
8.1.3 Procedure 22: Backout Fully Upgraded CMP Cluster

This procedure is used to backout a CMP cluster that has been fully upgraded. i.e. Both servers in the cluster are installed with 9.x and they are Active/Standby.

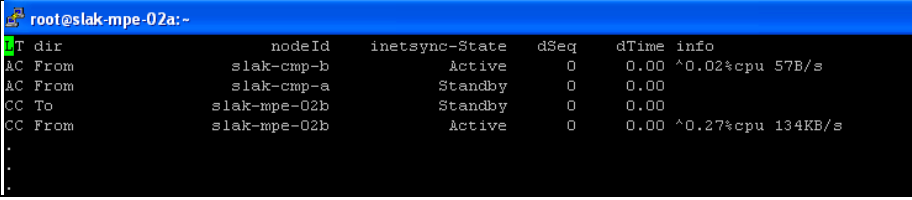
Pre-conditions:

- All MPE/MRA servers in the network are on 7.5
- Cluster is any of: CMP Primary or Secondary site
- One server of target cluster is on 9.x, and Active
- One server of target cluster is on 9.x and either Standby or Force Standby
- At the end of this procedure, both servers of the target cluster will be on 7.5.x, and Active/Standby.

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager Set Standby server to Force Standby (Backout first server in cluster)	IF cluster is Active/Standby, set Standby Server to Force Standby. GUI: Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance View Select Checkbox for the standby Server. Select Operation → Force Standby
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Option 1: GUI: Upgrade Manager. Backout the 9.x server software (Backout first server in cluster)	Choose Option 1 or Option 2 below, to Backout the server: Option 1 – use the Upgrade Manager GUI tool to backout GUI: Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance View Select Checkbox for the Force Standby Server to be backed out. Operation → Backout Server backout takes several minutes, and the final step will be a re-boot of the server. Verify When Backout completes, select the server and select: Operation → Push Script

Step	Procedure	Result
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Option 2: SSH: Backout the target 9.x server (Backout first server in cluster)	<p>Option 2 – execute backout from ssh root login to target</p> <p>Log into the target 9.x server as root:</p> <p>If using ssh, run the <code>screen</code> command to prevent hang-ups, and do not exit this screen session until the server reboots.</p> <pre># screen # getPolicyRev 9.x.0_xxx # cd /var/TKLC/backout # ./ugwrap --backout</pre> <p>NOTE: There are two dashes (--) before “backout”..</p> <p><Answer yes></p> <p>Server backout takes several minutes.</p> <p>After the backout script completes, it is necessary to reboot the server.</p> <pre># shutdown -r now</pre> <p>Verify</p> <p>After reboot, login and check status of server:</p> <pre># getPolicyRev 7.5.x_x.x.x # syscheck # ha.stat</pre>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Login to active server of the cluster – Wait for Replication sync	<pre># inetstat</pre> <p>Before Replication sync</p>  <p>After Replication sync</p>  <p>Do Not proceed until Replication is synced.</p>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager	<p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>If status is not shown, Select the checkbox for the current Force Standby MPE of the partially upgraded (mixed 7.5/9.x) cluster, and select Operation → Push Script</p> <p>Verify the Upgrade Status:</p> <pre>Completed:backout was completed at 09/29/2012 12:26:22</pre>

Step	Procedure	Result																								
6	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> <div>GUI: Verify Alarms</div>	<div><div>Active Alarms (Stats Reset: Manual)</div><div><div>Pause</div><div>Printable Format</div><div>Save as CSV</div><div>Export PDF</div><div>Columns</div><div>Filters</div></div><div>Display results per page: 50 [First/Prev]1[Next/Last] Total 1 pages</div><table><thead><tr><th>Server</th><th>Server Type</th><th>Severity</th><th>Alarm ID</th><th>Description</th><th>Time</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10</td><td>MPE</td><td>Minor</td><td>31103</td><td>DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB</td><td>09/29/2012 12:32:22 EDT</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10</td><td>MPE</td><td>Critical</td><td>31283</td><td>High availability server is offline</td><td>09/29/2012 12:29:05 EDT</td></tr><tr><td>slak-mpe-02b,1 0.250.85.11</td><td>MPE</td><td>Minor</td><td>31103</td><td>DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB</td><td>09/29/2012 12:32:23 EDT</td></tr></tbody></table></div>	Server	Server Type	Severity	Alarm ID	Description	Time	slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10	MPE	Minor	31103	DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB	09/29/2012 12:32:22 EDT	slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10	MPE	Critical	31283	High availability server is offline	09/29/2012 12:29:05 EDT	slak-mpe-02b,1 0.250.85.11	MPE	Minor	31103	DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB	09/29/2012 12:32:23 EDT
Server	Server Type	Severity	Alarm ID	Description	Time																					
slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10	MPE	Minor	31103	DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB	09/29/2012 12:32:22 EDT																					
slak-mpe-02a,1 0.250.85.10	MPE	Critical	31283	High availability server is offline	09/29/2012 12:29:05 EDT																					
slak-mpe-02b,1 0.250.85.11	MPE	Minor	31103	DB Replication process cannot apply update to DB	09/29/2012 12:32:23 EDT																					
7	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> <div>Cluster is now Partially Upgraded (one server 9.x, and one server 7.5.x)</div>	<div>The Backed out 7.5.x server is Force Standby.</div> <div>IMPORTANT: Do not Remove Force Standby. A 9.x server and a 7.5.x cannot be Active/Standby. One must remain in the Force Standby state.</div>																								
8	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> <div>GUI: Upgrade Manager</div> <div>Switch active server to 7.5.x</div>	<div><ul style="list-style-type: none">IF cluster 9.x server to backout is currently Active -- Execute this step to make 9.x server Force Standby, and make the 7.5.x server Active.IF 9.x server is already Force Standby, skip this step.<div>Login to Primary Active CMP as root</div><div># policyUpgrade.pl --failover <target_CMP_Hostname></div></div>																								

Step	Procedure	Result
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Backout the target 9.x server	<p>Execute backout from ssh root login to target</p> <p>Login to the target 9.x server as root:</p> <p>If using ssh, execute <code>screen</code> to prevent hang-ups, and do not exit this screen session until the server reboots.</p> <pre># screen # getPolicyRev 9.x.0_xxx # cd /var/TKLC/backout # ./ugwrap --backout</pre> <p>NOTE: There are two dashes (--) before “backout”..</p> <pre><Answer yes> Server backout takes several minutes. ... mysql stopped Installing JDK with option --nomd5 No JDK backout package found, ignoring... # # shutdown -r now</pre> <p>Verify:</p> <p>After reboot, login and check status of server:</p> <pre># getPolicyRev 7.5_xxx # syscheck # ha.stat</pre>
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP – Verify replication sync	<pre># inetstat</pre> 
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Upgrade Manager – Remove Force Standby	<p>Network → Topology</p> <p>Select CMP cluster</p> <p>Modify Server – remove Force Standby check</p>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

8.2 Backout of prepareUpgrade Command

This procedure performs a backout of the prepareUpgrade command, that was executed before the first CMP was upgraded. It removes the replication exclusion step. It is only executed after all MPE/MRA servers and all CMPs, are backed out.

Pre-conditions:

- All servers in the Policy system are on 7.5.x
- The “prepareUpgrade” action from procedure to Upgrade the first CMP was previously executed.

8.2.1 Procedure 23: Remove Replication Exclusions (Backout of prepareUpgrade Command)

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP Verify Exclusions need to be removed	<pre># iqt -p NodeInfo nodeId nodeName hostName inhibitFlag nodeCap excludeTables A3411.121 slak-cmp-b slak-cmp-b,10.250.85.26 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef A3411.190 slak-cmp-a slak-cmp-a,10.250.85.25 H MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C1428.038 slak-mpe-07a slak-mpe-07a,10.250.85.28 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C1428.073 slak-mpe-07b slak-mpe-07b,10.250.85.29 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3265.167 slak-mra-b slak-mra-b,10.250.85.5 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3265.212 slak-mra-a slak-mra-a,10.250.85.4 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3573.020 slak-mpe-01a slak-mpe-01a,10.250.85.7 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3573.027 slak-mpe-01b slak-mpe-01b,10.250.85.8 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef</pre> <p>IF the exclusions “LongParam,AppEventDef” are seen, then proceed.</p>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP Remove Replication table exclusions	<p>Remove Replication exclusions “LongParam,AppEventDef” for all nodes</p> <pre># ivi NodeInfo</pre> <p>You are now in a “vi” editor session. Use standard “vi” edit commands to proceed.</p>

Step	Procedure	Result
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Active CMP ivi NodeInfo	Initial edit screen may look like this: <pre> #!/bin/sh iload -ha -xU -fnodeId -fnodeName -fhostName -finhibitFlag -fnodeCap \ -fexcludeTables NodeInfo \ <<'!!!!' A0853.107 brbg-cmp-a brbg-cmp-a,10.250.84.25 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef A0853.244 brbg-cmp-b brbg-cmp-b,10.250.84.26 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef A1408.065 slak-cmp-b slak-cmp-b,10.250.85.26 MasterCapable A1408.213 slak-cmp-a slak-cmp-a,10.250.85.25 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C0371.030 brbg-mpe-01b brbg-mpe-01b,10.250.84.8 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C0371.252 brbg-mpe-01a brbg-mpe-01a,10.250.84.7 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C1533.011 slak-mpe-01a slak-mpe-01a,10.250.85.7 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C1533.125 slak-mpe-01b slak-mpe-01b,10.250.85.8 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C1751.030 slak-mra-a slak-mra-a,10.250.85.4 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C1751.145 slak-mra-b slak-mra-b,10.250.85.5 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C2080.054 brbg-mra-a brbg-mra-a,10.250.84.4 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C2080.221 brbg-mra-b brbg-mra-b,10.250.84.5 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C2399.016 brbg-mpe-07a brbg-mpe-07a,10.250.84.28 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C2399.048 brbg-mpe-07b brbg-mpe-07b,10.250.84.29 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3701.051 slak-mpe-07a slak-mpe-07a,10.250.85.28 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3701.117 slak-mpe-07b slak-mpe-07b,10.250.85.29 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef !!!! </pre>

Step	Procedure	Result
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Active CMP ivi NodeInfo Edit to remove Exclusions for all clusters	After edit, the screen may look like this: <pre>#!/bin/sh iload -ha -xU -fnodeId -fnodeName -fhostName -finhibitFlag -fnodeCap \ -fexcludeTables NodeInfo \ <<'!!!!' A0853.107 brbg-cmp-a brbg-cmp-a,10.250.84.25 MasterCapable A0853.244 brbg-cmp-b brbg-cmp-b,10.250.84.26 MasterCapable A1408.065 slak-cmp-b slak-cmp-b,10.250.85.26 MasterCapable A1408.213 slak-cmp-a slak-cmp-a,10.250.85.25 MasterCapable C0371.030 brbg-mpe-01b brbg-mpe-01b,10.250.84.8 MasterCapable C0371.252 brbg-mpe-01a brbg-mpe-01a,10.250.84.7 MasterCapable C1533.011 slak-mpe-01a slak-mpe-01a,10.250.85.7 MasterCapable C1533.125 slak-mpe-01b slak-mpe-01b,10.250.85.8 MasterCapable C1751.030 slak-mra-a slak-mra-a,10.250.85.4 MasterCapable C1751.145 slak-mra-b slak-mra-b,10.250.85.5 MasterCapable C2080.054 brbg-mra-a brbg-mra-a,10.250.84.4 MasterCapable C2080.221 brbg-mra-b brbg-mra-b,10.250.84.5 MasterCapable C2399.016 brbg-mpe-07a brbg-mpe-07a,10.250.84.28 MasterCapable C2399.048 brbg-mpe-07b brbg-mpe-07b,10.250.84.29 MasterCapable C3701.051 slak-mpe-07a slak-mpe-07a,10.250.85.28 MasterCapable C3701.117 slak-mpe-07b slak-mpe-07b,10.250.85.29 MasterCapable !!!!</pre>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: ivi NodeInfo Save or Quit the NodeInfo table	IF it was needed to Edit the Table: Save and quit <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exit ivi using the command 'ZZ' or ':wq' (no quotes) Answer 'y' to the question: APPLY THE CHANGES [yn]? IF no edit was needed: Quit: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exit ivi using the command ':q' (no quotes)
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP – Verify Exclusions are removed from previous step.	<pre># iqt -p NodeInfo</pre>
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify Health	Verify Alarms
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

8.2.2 Procedure 24: Backout of Replication Activation

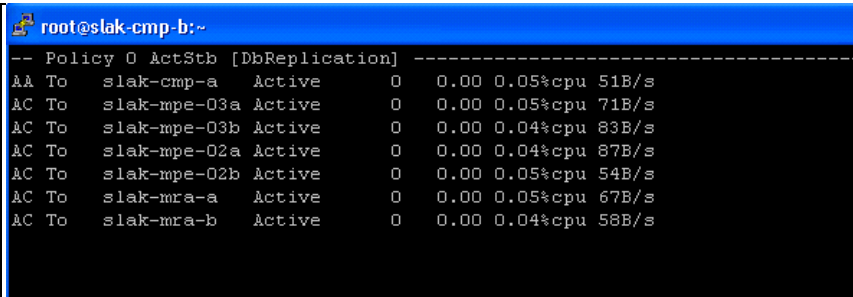
This procedure performs a backout of the Replication Activation.

It must be applied to all servers, if the Replication Activation procedure was previously performed, and any MPE/MRA server clusters need to be backed out to the 7.5 release.

Pre-conditions:

- All servers in the Policy system are previously upgraded to the 9.x Release
- Some or all servers had the “Upgrade Completion” applied (which activated the new replication).

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Open CMP GUI	Login to CMP GUI as Administrator (or as Upgrade Engineer, if an account is defined for this).
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Open ssh session to Primary Active CMP server 1. Access the login prompt. 2. Log into the server as the root user	<pre>login: root Password: <enter password></pre>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Verify which servers have been set to Upgrade Completion	<pre># iqt -p NodeInfo [root@slak-cmp-a approximately]# iqt -p NodeInfo nodeId nodeName hostName nodeCapability inhibitRepPlans siteId excludeTables A2548.105 slak-cmp-b slak-cmp-b,10.250.85.8 Active Unspecified A2548.142 slak-cmp-a slak-cmp-a,10.250.85.7 Active Unspecified C0699.106 slak-mpe-03a slak-mpe-03a,10.250.85.13 Active Unspecified C0699.238 slak-mpe-03b slak-mpe-03b,10.250.85.14 Active Unspecified C3238.095 slak-mpe-02a slak-mpe-02a,10.250.85.10 Active Unspecified C3238.203 slak-mpe-02b slak-mpe-02b,10.250.85.11 Active Unspecified C3310.177 slak-mra-a slak-mra-a,10.250.85.4 Active Unspecified C3310.194 slak-mra-b slak-mra-b,10.250.85.5 Active Unspecified</pre> <p>The servers with the Exclusions set to “” indicate that these servers had “Upgrade Completion”.</p> <p>Servers with Exclusions “LongParam,AppEventDef” have not been completed.</p> <p>Only servers with Exclusions set to “” need to be backout out. Make a list of these.</p>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Confirm Upgrade status of all sites and servers	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance <pre>Confirm in the “Running Release” column that all servers in the network are upgraded to 9.x.</pre>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Change Replication mode: CMPs (One cluster at a time)	<p>If one of more CMP clusters need to be backout out.</p> <p>Do Primary Site First, then Secondary Site.</p> <p>Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance</p> <p>Select CMP cluster</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the checkbox for the Standby CMP server, and execute: Operation → Undo Upgrade Completion 2. Select the checkbox for the Active CMP server, and execute: Operation → Undo Upgrade Completion

Step	Procedure	Result
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: CMP Active Server	Verify that the Legacy Replication is active on the cluster: # inetstat
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Change Replication mode: MPEs (One cluster at a time)	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Select MPE cluster 1. Select the checkbox for the Standby MPE server , and execute: Operation → Undo Upgrade Completion 2. Select the checkbox for the Active MPE server , and execute: Operation → Undo Upgrade Completion REPEAT for other MPE clusters to backout.
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Change Replication mode: MRAs	Upgrade Manager → System Maintenance Select Secondary-Site MRA cluster 1. Select the checkbox for the Standby CMP server , and execute: Operation → Undo Upgrade Completion 2. Select the checkbox for the Active CMP server , and execute: Operation → Undo Upgrade Completion REPEAT for other MRA clusters to backout.
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Verify Active Alarms	System Wide Reports → Active Alarms All Upgrade related alarms should be cleared.
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP, confirm that replication to MPE/MRAs is Active/Standby	# inetstat  <pre>root@slak-cmp-b:~ -- Policy 0 ActStb [DbReplication] ----- AA To slak-cmp-a Active 0 0.00 0.05%cpu 51B/s AC To slak-mpe-03a Active 0 0.00 0.05%cpu 71B/s AC To slak-mpe-03b Active 0 0.00 0.04%cpu 83B/s AC To slak-mpe-02a Active 0 0.00 0.04%cpu 87B/s AC To slak-mpe-02b Active 0 0.00 0.05%cpu 54B/s AC To slak-mra-a Active 0 0.00 0.05%cpu 67B/s AC To slak-mra-b Active 0 0.00 0.04%cpu 58B/s</pre>

Step	Procedure	Result
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSH: Primary Active CMP, confirm that exclusions are added	Verify that the Replication exclusions “LongParam,AppEventDef” are added in the NodeInfo Table <pre># iqt -p NodeInfo nodeId nodeName hostName inhibitFlag nodeCap excludeTables A3411.121 slak-cmp-b slak-cmp-b,10.250.85.26 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef A3411.190 slak-cmp-a slak-cmp-a,10.250.85.25 H MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C1428.038 slak-mpe-07a slak-mpe-07a,10.250.85.28 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C1428.073 slak-mpe-07b slak-mpe-07b,10.250.85.29 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3265.167 slak-mra-b slak-mra-b,10.250.85.5 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3265.212 slak-mra-a slak-mra-a,10.250.85.4 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3573.020 slak-mpe-01a slak-mpe-01a,10.250.85.7 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef C3573.027 slak-mpe-01b slak-mpe-01b,10.250.85.8 MasterCapable LongParam,AppEventDef</pre>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

8.2.3 Procedure 25: Recovery of Server from Backup

This procedure is used to recover a server that is in an unknown state, as a result of Upgrade/Backout activities. In this procedure, the server will be installed again as 7.5.x, and the needed data recovered from a previous backup.

It is assumed that the application on the server is not active (Out-of-Service).

Before taking this step, consult with My Oracle Support.

Expected Pre-conditions:

- Primary Active CMP is 7.5.x or 9.x
- Either both servers of the cluster are Out-of-Service, or just one server is Out-of-Service
- At the end of this procedure, one server will be recovered to 7.5.x from Backup, and may be Active or Standby.

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Caution	CAUTION: Do not remove the affected server from the Topology forms on the CMP GUI. Modification of the Topology forms is not supported during upgrade activities.

Step	Procedure	Result
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Console/iLo/PMAC: Clean Install server (re-install TPD OS)	<p>At this step, the purpose is clean any disk areas previously used, and re-install the TPD OS.</p> <p>Access a login on the server, and perform these commands:</p> <pre># service qp_procmgr stop # prod.stop # getPlatRev</pre> <p>If the plat rev is 4.0, then:</p> <pre># ./usr/TKLC/plat/sbin removeVG --scrub</pre> <p>If the plat rev is 5.0, then:</p> <pre># ./usr/TKLC/plat/sbin storageClean lvm --vgName=vgroot --level=scrub</pre> <p>If PMAC is available, use PMAC to Install OS on the server.</p> <p>If PMAC is not available, then:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Access iLo/RMM port of server, and start remote Console. 4. Mount the TPD OS ISO on the server (either CD drive, or iLo Virtual Mount). <pre># shutdown -r now</pre> <p>boot: <enter boot command for the server></p>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Console/iLo/PMAC: Install the Application	<p>If PMAC is available, use PMAC to install (Upgrade) the Application.</p> <p>If PMAC is not available, Mount the Application ISO on the server (either CD drive, or iLo Virtual Mount).</p> <pre># su - platcfg</pre> <p>Maintenance → Upgrade</p>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Console/iLo: Copy server backup to the server.	Use iLo access to transfer the Backup file to the server.
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	Console/iLo: Execute Restore from Backup	<pre># su - platcfg</pre> <p>Execute Restore</p> <p>Wait for boot</p>
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	GUI: Confirm server is synced to the CMP.	<p>Platform Administration → Topology</p> <p>View the cluster from the Topology form, to confirm that the re-installed server is detected.</p>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

APPENDIX A. MANAGING HA STATUS OF SERVERS

A.1 Understanding the ha.states and ha.mystate commands

IMPORTANT: *ha.stat* command is no longer supported in Rel 9.x.

It is replaced with 2 commands:

- ha.mystate
- ha.states

The ha.states or ha.mystate command is executed as root on any of the CMP, MRA or MPE servers.

It reports the High Availability status of the clustered servers, or just the single server, respectively.

The ha.states command refreshes the status every second, and will run continually until the user exits with a cntl-C.

The ha.mystate command runs once and exits. Both have the same data format.

This is the example of the normal display of these commands on a server which is fully clustered:

During the upgrade from 7.x to 9.x, following will be output as applicable, as DbReplication_old will still be active/standby as per the active/standby server:

Active:

```
root@tb4-mpe-02b:~# ha.mystate
resourceId  role      node      subResources  lastUpdate
DbReplication Active    C0630.121  0 0521:070621.781
VIP Active  C0630.121  0 0521:070621.850
QP Active   C0630.121  0 0521:070621.783
DbReplication_old Active    C0630.121  0 0521:070621.780
root@tb4-mpe-02b:~#
```

Standby:

```
root@tb4-mpe-02a:~# ha.mystate
resourceId  role      node      subResources  lastUpdate
DbReplication Stby      C0630.206  0 0521:071805.158
VIP Stby     C0630.206  0 0521:071805.070
QP Stby      C0630.206  0 0521:071805.037
DbReplication_old Stby      C0630.206  0 0521:071935.872
root@tb4-mpe-02a:~#
```

ha.states:

```
root@tb4-mpe-02a:~# ha.states
resourceId  role      node      subResources  lastUpdate
DbReplication Stby      C0630.206  0 0521:071805.158
DbReplication Active    C0630.121  0 0521:070621.781
VIP Stby     C0630.206  0 0521:071805.070
VIP Active    C0630.121  0 0521:070621.850
QP Stby      C0630.206  0 0521:071805.037
QP Active     C0630.121  0 0521:070621.783
DbReplication_old Stby      C0630.206  0 0521:071935.872
DbReplication_old Active    C0630.121  0 0521:070621.780
```

During upgrade from 9.x.y to 9.z.a.ha.mystate command output will be similar to the following:

```
root@cs-tb31-cmp-bay3:~  
[root@cs-tb31-cmp-bay3 ~]# ha.mystate  
resourceId  role      node      subResources  lastUpdate  
DbReplication Active    A0804.231      0 0529:090223.383  
VIP Active    A0804.231      0 0529:090223.407  
QP Active    A0804.231      0 0529:090226.867  
DbReplication_old OOS      A0804.231      0 0529:090328.074  
[root@cs-tb31-cmp-bay3 ~]#
```

ha.states command output:

```
root@cs-tb31-cmp-bay3:~  
resourceId  role      node      subResources  lastUpdate  
DbReplication Stby      A0804.136      0 0529:090329.994  
DbReplication Active    A0804.231      0 0529:090223.383  
VIP Stby      A0804.136      0 0529:090330.008  
VIP Active    A0804.231      0 0529:090223.407  
QP Stby      A0804.136      0 0529:090332.502  
QP Active    A0804.231      0 0529:090226.867  
DbReplication_old OOS      A0804.136      0 0529:090329.675  
DbReplication_old OOS      A0804.231      0 0529:090328.074  
.
```

There are several key fields in the ha.states.

- Resource – function on the Node that is being reported: QP (Application), Replication, and IP VIP ownership
- Role – Status of HA relationship for the Resource: Active, Standby, OOS
- NodeId – Identifier used in the software for this specific Node instance

In the Normal condition:

- One server will show Active for QP, Replication and VIP
- Other server will show Standby for QP, Replication and VIP
- The same ha.states status will be reported from both servers in the cluster

APPENDIX B. METHODS OF DELIVERING SOFTWARE UPGRADE ISO

There are several methods to deliver the Software ISO to the server.

The above Upgrade procedure assumes scp is used.

In this appendix is a list of several other methods that may be useful.

IMPORTANT: *There should be a TPD DVD and Application DVD left on-site, to aid in re-installing a server after a field repair.*

B.1 Copy ISO from USB Key

It is possible to put the upgrade ISO on a USB key, and use this to load the ISO to the server.

To do this:

1. USB must be formatted with FAT 32, and at least 1G
2. Copy ISO to USB key, from a laptop or any computer
3. Insert USB key to server
4. Mount to /mnt/upgrade
5. Copy the ISO file to /var/TKLC/upgrade.
6. Unmount USB and remove

B.2 Copy ISO from DVD {PP5160, DL360}

If a three Application DVDs are delivered to a site (CMP, MRA, MPE), but there multiple servers to be upgraded, it may be useful to extract the ISO from the DVD, and copy to the servers that need it, prior to the Maintenance interface.

As long as the ISO is placed in the /var/TKLC/upgrade directory, the Upgrade will find the ISO, and use it for the installation.

B.2.1 Procedure 26: Upgrade from Physical CD media {PP5160, DL360}

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Insert Policy Management 9.x Upgrade CD	Insert media in CD-ROM tray
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Access the login prompt. Log into the server as the root user on the iLO or RMM. 	<pre>CentOS release 4.6 (Final) Kernel 2.6.18-1.2849prere13.3.0_63.1.0 on an i686 localhost login: root Password: <root_password></pre>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify ISO images do not already exist by examining contents of /var/TKLC/upgrade directory.	<p>If ISO image files exist you will need to remove them</p> <pre># ls -al /var/TKLC/upgrade total 16 dr-xr-xr-x 2 root root 4096 Oct 22 16:31 . dr-xr-xr-x 21 root root 4096 Oct 18 13:40 .. #</pre>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Determine the physical device name.</p> <p>The primary physical device will be the first device listed. In the example it is device hda.</p>	<pre># getCDROM SONY DVD RW AW-G540A hda Intel(R) RMM2 VDrive 2 scd0 Intel(R) RMM2 VDrive 3 scd1 Intel(R) RMM2 VDrive 4 scd2 Intel(R) RMM2 VDrive 1 scd3</pre>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	Mount the physical media	<pre># mount /dev/<dev> /mnt/upgrade</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre># mount /dev/hda /mnt/upgrade</pre>
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Validate physical media</p> <p>Verify that the command output indicates the CDROM is Valid.</p>	<pre># /mnt/upgrade/upgrade/.validate/validate_cd</pre> <p>Below is an example of the command output. Actual values returned may vary depending on version of software and firmware installed.</p> <pre>Validating cdrom... UMVT Validate Utility v1.10.0, (c)Oracle, January 2009 Validating /var/TKLC/upgrade/872-2069-02-1.1.0_70.36.0_SUP35.iso Date&Time: 2010-03-18 14:21:16 Volume ID: 872-2069-02_Rev_A;70.36.0 Part Number: 872-2069-02_Rev_A Version: 70.36.0 Disc Label: TPD Disc description: TPD The media validation is complete, the result is: PASS CDROM is Valid</pre> <p>NOTE: Do not continue if CD validation reports any errors or is invalid until new physical media can be obtained.</p>

Step	Procedure	Result												
7	<input type="checkbox"/> Change to the upgrade directory	<pre># cd /var/TKLC/upgrade</pre>												
8	<input type="checkbox"/> Verify enough space exists for ISO	<p>Verify that there is at least 600M in the Avail column. If not, clean up files until there is space available.</p> <p>Make sure you know what files you can remove safely before cleaning up. It is recommended that you only clean up files in the <code>/var/TKLC/upgrade</code> directory as this is a platform owned directory that should only contain ISO images. This directory should not be expected to contain images for any length of time as they can get purged. Removing files other than those in directory <code>/var/TKLC/upgrade</code> is potentially dangerous.</p> <pre># df -h /var/TKLC</pre> <table><thead><tr><th>Filesystem</th><th>Size</th><th>Used</th><th>Avail</th><th>Use%</th><th>Mounted on</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>/dev/md8</td><td>4.0G</td><td>89M</td><td>3.7G</td><td>3%</td><td>/var/TKLC</td></tr></tbody></table>	Filesystem	Size	Used	Avail	Use%	Mounted on	/dev/md8	4.0G	89M	3.7G	3%	/var/TKLC
Filesystem	Size	Used	Avail	Use%	Mounted on									
/dev/md8	4.0G	89M	3.7G	3%	/var/TKLC									
9	<input type="checkbox"/> Copy ISO	<pre># cp /mnt/upgrade/*.iso /var/TKLC/upgrade</pre>												
10	<input type="checkbox"/> Remove CD	Remove media in CD-ROM tray												
11	<input type="checkbox"/> Procedure to ISO image validation	Go to to Procedure 6: Verify CMP Software Images.												
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED														

APPENDIX C. INSTALL PMAC 5.0 ON A C-CLASS SYSTEM

This section includes procedures to perform a new install of PMAC 5.0 on an existing pre-5.0 PMAC server.

PMAC 5.0 is deployed on a Virtual OS (TVOE) environment. The TVOE OS must be installed first, and then the PMAC application ISO is installed. Because there is only a small amount of configuration data needed for PMAC, this approach is recommended over a PMAC Migration procedure.

PMAC install is not service affecting for the Policy system.

NOTE: In Policy Rel 9.x, PMAC is used for Installation activities, growth of new servers and Field repair activities. It is also used for deploying Firmware upgrades.

C.1 Preparations for Installation

The following steps will collect information/data needed for PMAC backout procedure, if needed.

- Prepare Networking Information
- Perform Health checks
- Save Backups

Using the installation site survey or the configuration profile, make note of the network configuration of the Management Server in the Network Layout Workseet below.

This configuration information may be used to re-create the network configuration on the TVOE installation. This is not an exhaustive list of required network settings and may duplicate information in the detailed site survey. Not all of the rows will be filled.

To save the details of a device/bond, execute the following commands at the PMAC 3.x shell.

Table 4. Network Configuration capture

Values	Command
Network Address	# cat /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg- <i><interface></i>
Netmask	...
IP Address	NETMASK=255.255.255.0
Slave Interfaces	...
Role	IPADDR=169.254.116.4 NETWORK=169.254.116.0
	# cat /proc/net/bonding/ <i><bond></i> grep Interface
	Slave Interface: eth01
	Slave Interface: eth02
	# pmacadm getNetworkInterfaces
	Device Name : bond0
	Network Id : 1
	IP Address : 169.254.116.4
	Description : Control network for blades
	Device Name : bond0.2
	Network Id : 2
	IP Address : 10.240.4.5
	Description : PMC Management
	Device Name : bond1
	Network Id : 3
	IP Address : 10.240.6.220
	Description : Netbackup interface
	# pmacadm getNetworkRoles
	NetworkRole Id : 1
	Network Role : control
	Network Id : 1
	NetworkRole Id : 2
	Network Role : management
	Network Id : 2
	NetworkRole Id : 3
	Network Role : netbackup
	Network Id : 3
NTP Server IP Address	# grep ntp /etc/hosts
SNMP NMS IP address/community string	10.250.32.10 ntpserver1
	Using platcfg, navigate to the following configuration form: Network Configuration → SNMP Configuration → NMS Configuration

Table 5. Network Layout Worksheet

Bond/Interface	Slave interfaces	Network Address	Netmask	IP address	Role control, management, netbackup, etc.
bond0					control
		<Ctrl_net_addr>	<Ctrl_netmask >	<Ctrl_ip_addr>	<Ctrl_bridge>
For Segregated network environments					
bond1					management
		<Mgmt_net_addr>	<Mgmt_netmask >	<Mgmt_ip_addr>	<Mgmt_bridge>
bond2					netbackup
		<NB_net_addr>	<NB_netmask >	<NB_ip_addr>	<NB_bridge>
bond3					
For non-segregated network environments					
Tagged bond interface					management
		<Mgmt_net_addr>	<Mgmt_netmask >	<Mgmt_ip_addr>	<Mgmt_bridge>
Tagged bond interface					netbackup
		<NB_net_addr>	<NB_netmask >	<NB_ip_addr>	<NB_bridge>
Tagged bond interface					

C.1.1 Procedure 27. PMAC Health Check

This procedure provides instructions on how to perform a healthcheck on the Management Server hosting the PMAC application.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact My Oracle Support and ask for ASSISTANCE.

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	If necessary, access the PMAC server command prompt	If necessary, access the Management Server command prompt.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	At the command prompt, run the <code>sentry status</code> command to verify the status of the PMAC application.	<pre> [root@foo-1060101-a approximately]# sentry status sending status command... PM&C Sentry Status ----- sentryd started: Thu May 31 07:47:31 2012 Current activity mode: ACTIVE Process PID Status StartTS NumR ----- smacTalk 5932 running Sun Dec 6 07:47:31 2009 1 smacMon 5935 running Sun Dec 6 07:47:31 2009 1 hpiPortAudit 5951 running Sun Dec 6 07:47:31 2009 1 snmpEventHandler 5962 running Sun Dec 6 07:47:31 2009 1 eclipseHelp 5971 running Sun Dec 6 07:47:31 2009 2 Thu June 7 11:09:44 2012 Command Complete. [root@foo-1060101-a approximately]# </pre>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	At the command prompt, run <code>alarmMgr</code> .	<pre> [root@foo-1060101-a approximately]#alarmMgr -alarmStatus [root@foo-1060101-a approximately]# </pre>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>If any error messages are displayed by the <code>alarmMgr</code> command, if <code>sentry</code> shows any PMAC processes not running, or <code>alarmMgr</code> shows any failures, then there is a problem with the Management Server or PMAC application.</p> <p>Contact My Oracle Support for information on how to proceed.</p>	<p>If <code>sentry</code> shows any PMAC processes not running, then the healthcheck was not successful.</p> <p>Contact My Oracle Support for information on how to proceed.</p> <p>Otherwise, if <code>alarmMgr</code> shows no alarms and <code>sentry</code> shows all processes running, then PMAC appears to be running normally.</p>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

C.1.2 Procedure 28. Backup the PMAC Application Data

This procedure backs up all necessary PMAC data.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

Should this procedure fail, contact My Oracle Support and ask for UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Optional: Insert a blank optical media	Optional: Insert a blank optical media into the optical drive of the Management Server.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Access the Management Server command prompt	Access the Management Server command prompt as detailed in Appendix A, Accessing the Management Server Command Prompt.
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Get special files for backup	<pre># mkdir /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/4.0migration # cp /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/vlan.conf /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/4.0migration/</pre> <p>NOTE: vlan.conf is an optional file, and may not exist on all servers.</p> <p>Although the use of switchconfig, which uses the vlan.conf file, is deprecated, there may be useful data in this file. The netConfig tool does not use this file.</p> <pre># hponcfg -a -w ilo_backup HP Lights-Out Online Configuration utility Version 4.0.0 Pass 6 (c) Hewlett-Packard Company, 2011 Firmware Revision = 2.09 Device type = iLO 2 Driver name = hpilo Management Processor configuration is successfully written to file "ilo_backup" # cp ilo_backup /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/4.0migration/ # pmaccli getProvCabinets > capture_pmac_info # pmaccli getProvEnclosures >> capture_pmac_info # pmacadm getNetworkInterfaces > capture_networkInterfaces # pmacadm getNetworkRoles > capture_networkRoles # grep ntp /etc/hosts > capture_ntp # cp capture* /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/4.0migration/</pre>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Perform a backup	<p>Execute only one of the following, based on backup method and blank optical media type.</p> <p>For file backup:</p> <pre>[root@pmac]# pmacadm backup</pre> <p>For CD backup:</p> <pre>[root@pmac]# pmacadm backup --media=CD-R</pre> <p>For DVD-R backup:</p> <pre>[root@pmac]# pmacadm backup --media=DVD-R</pre> <p>For DVD+R backup:</p> <pre>[root@pmac]# pmacadm backup --media=DVD+R</pre>

Step	Procedure	Result
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	When the backup is finished, remove and label the PMAC backup disk.	<p>Navigate to the Task Monitoring page on the PMAC GUI. Verify the backup task completes successfully.</p> <p>Copy the backup file to save safe location (usb or another server):</p> <p>copy the resulting .pef</p> <p>Or, remove the optical disk from the optical drive of the Management Server and label it PMAC 3.2 backup.</p>
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	Manually back up any ISO images.	<p>The migration will not include ISO images provisioned on the PMAC. Navigate to Software →Manage Software Images page in the GUI, to see a list of the software provisioned on the PMAC. If the loss of the existing ISO images is not a problem, then no ISO backups need to be done, they will be removed from the provisioned data (reported in Task Monitoring) if they are not found after the migration.</p> <p>If loss of any of these ISO images is unacceptable, copy the desired ISO images from the PMAC server to a secure remote location using any method available (scp, ftp, sftp, etc.)</p>
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	Record the host name for later use.	Record the host name of the Management Server for later use.
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

C.2 Installation of PMAC 5.0

The following procedure will clean install the PMAC server to use PMAC 5.0. All existing data on the server will be removed.

C.2.1 Procedure c-1. Install TVOE 2.0 on Management Server (DL360/DL380)


This procedure will install TVOE 2.0 on the Management Server

NEEDED MATERIAL:

- TVOE 2.0 Media

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact My Oracle Support and ask for ASSISTANCE.

Step	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Connect to the Server	Connect to the Server using a VGA Display and USB Keyboard, or via the iLO interface using IE.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Insert TVOE Media into Server	<div>3. Insert TVOE media in the optical drive. (You can also attach the TVOE ISO to the iLO).</div> <div>4. Restart the server</div> <div># shutdown -r now</div>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Begin IPM Process	<div>Once the Server reboots, it will reboot from the TVOE media and a boot prompt shall be displayed.</div> <div>IPM the server using the following command:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none">• For a DL360/G5 server:<div>TPDnoraaid console=tty0</div>• For a DL360/G6/G7/Gen8 or DL380 G6 server:<div>TPDnoraaid diskconfig=HPHW,force console=tty0</div></div>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	IPM Complete	<div>The IPM process takes about 30 minutes, you will see several messages and screens in the process.</div> <div>Once the IPM is complete, you will be prompted to press Enter as shown below.</div> <div>Remove the disk from the drive or unmount the TPD image from the iLO and press Enter to reboot the server. The CD may eject automatically.</div> <div></div>

5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Server Reboot	Once the Server Reboots, you should see a login prompt. During the first system boot, swap files may be initialized and activated. Each swap file will take about 2 minutes. If no login prompt is displayed after waiting 15 minutes, contact Oracle Customer Support for Assistance.
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED			

C.2.2 Procedure c-2. Upgrade Management Server Firmware

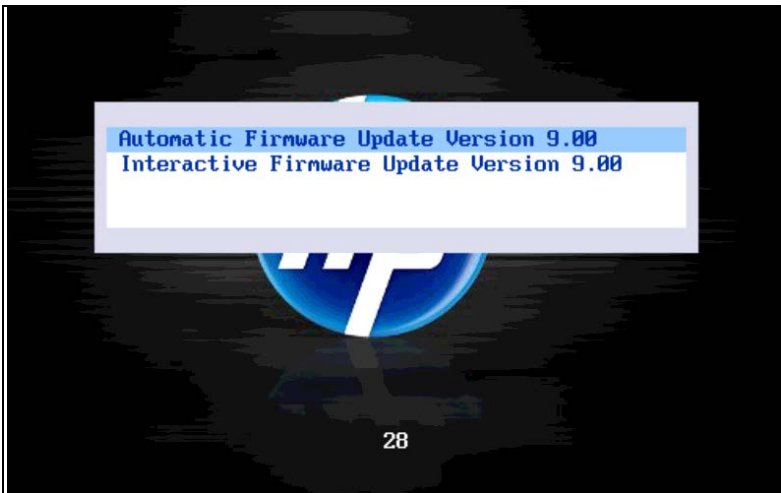
This procedure will upgrade the DL360 or DL380 server firmware

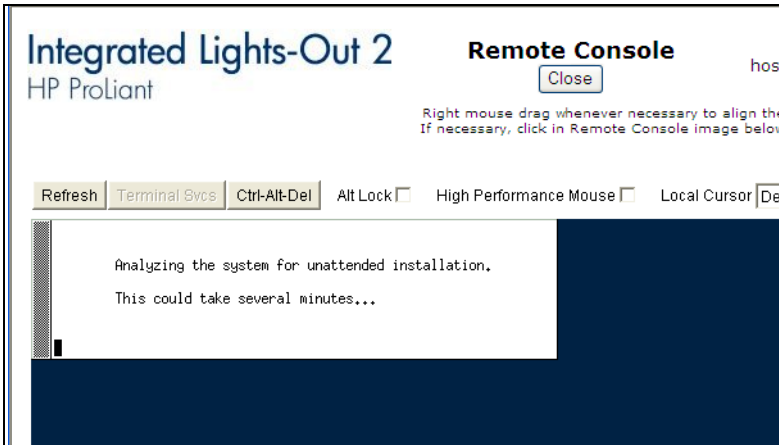
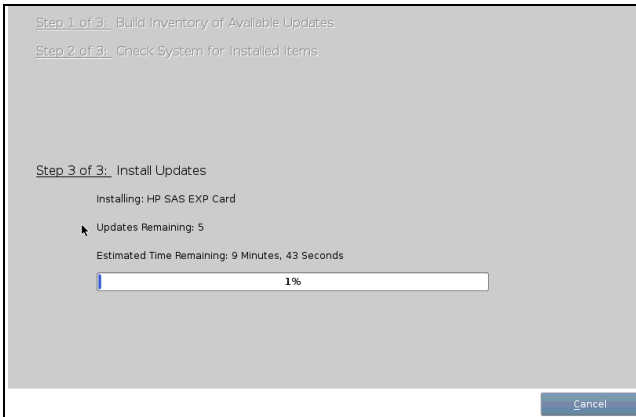
NEEDED MATERIAL:

- HP Firmware Maintenance CD/DVD
- HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack Release Notes

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact My Oracle Support and ask for ASSISTANCE.

Step		Procedure	Result
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Prepare to upgrade DL360 or DL380 server firmware	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Insert HP Smart Update Firmware DVD into the removable media drive of the DL360 or DL380 server. 2. Launch web based iLO: use IE. 3. Launch the Integrated Remote Console on the server. 4. Click Yes if the Security Alert pops up.
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Restart the DL360 or DL380 server	In the integrated remote console, log into the server as root if needed, and run: <pre># shutdown -r now</pre>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Remote Console: Perform an unattended firmware upgrade	The server will reboot and open the HP Smart Update Firmware ISO and present the following boot prompt. Press Enter to select the Automatic Firmware Update procedure.  <p><i>If no key is pressed in 30 seconds the system will automatically perform an Automatic Firmware Update.</i></p>

Step	Procedure	Result
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Remote Console: System analysis	<p>The firmware install will perform a system scan of the server in which it will identify all of the firmware components that are eligible for upgrade. This process may take up to 10 minutes and during that time the following screen is displayed on the console.</p>  <p>NOTE: No progress indication is displayed during the system scan and analysis stage. In about 10 minutes the installation will automatically proceed to the next step.</p>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	Remote Console: Monitor installation	<p>Once analysis is complete the installer will begin to upgrade the eligible firmware components. A progress indicator is display at this time as shown below.</p>  <p>NOTE: If the iLO2 firmware is to be upgraded it will be upgraded last. At this point the iLO2 session will be terminated and you will lose the remote console, virtual media and Web GUI connections to the server. This is expected and will not impact the firmware upgrade process.</p>
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	Local Workstation: Clean up	Once the firmware updates have been completed the server will automatically be rebooted. At this time you may close the remote console and the iLO2 Web GUI browser session.
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	Local Workstation: Verify server availability	Wait 3 to 5 minutes and verify the server has rebooted and is available by gaining access to the login prompt.
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Remove the firmware CD	Remove the HP Smart Update Firmware DVD from the removable media drive. Exit from the Integrated Remote Console .
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

C.2.3 Procedure c-3. TVOE/Management Server Network Configuration

This procedure will configure the Network on the TVOE/Management Server

PREREQUISITE: *Procedure c-1. Install TVOE 2.0 on Management Server* has been completed.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact My Oracle Support and ask for ASSISTANCE.

Refer to the table below to determine the Ethernet port names to use throughout this procedure based on the hardware type and configuration.

Network Interface	DL360 (w/o HP NC364T 4pt Gigabit)	DL360 (with HP NC364T 4pt Gigabit in PCI Slot 2)	DL380	DL380 (with HP NC364T 4pt Gigabit in PCI Slot 3)
<ethernet_interface_1>	eth01	eth01	eth01	eth01
<ethernet_interface_2>	eth02	eth02	eth02	eth02
<ethernet_interface_3>		eth21	eth03	eth03
<ethernet_interface_4>		eth22	eth04	eth04
<ethernet_interface_5>		eth23		eth31

Step	Procedure	Result												
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Determine Bridge names and interfaces	<p>Determine the bridge name to be used on the TVOE management server for the management network and fill in the <TVOE_Management_Bridge> and <TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface> values in the table below.</p> <p>If netbackup is to be used, determine the bridge name to be used for the netbackup network and fill in the <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge> and <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface> values in the table below:</p> <table> <tr> <th>PMAC Interface Alias</th><th>TVOE Bridge Name</th><th>TVOE Bridge Interface</th></tr> <tr> <td>control</td><td>control</td><td> Fill in the appropriate value (default is bond0): <div></div> <TVOE_Control_Bridge_Interface> </td></tr> <tr> <td>management</td><td> Fill in the appropriate value: (default is management) <div></div> <TVOE_Management_Bridge> </td><td> Fill in the appropriate value: (example: bond0.2) <div></div> <TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface> </td></tr> <tr> <td>Netbackup (if applicable)</td><td> Fill in the appropriate value: (default is netbackup) <div></div> <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge> </td><td> Fill in the appropriate value: (example: bond2) <div></div> <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface> </td></tr> </table>	PMAC Interface Alias	TVOE Bridge Name	TVOE Bridge Interface	control	control	Fill in the appropriate value (default is bond0): <div></div> <TVOE_Control_Bridge_Interface>	management	Fill in the appropriate value: (default is management) <div></div> <TVOE_Management_Bridge>	Fill in the appropriate value: (example: bond0.2) <div></div> <TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface>	Netbackup (if applicable)	Fill in the appropriate value: (default is netbackup) <div></div> <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge>	Fill in the appropriate value: (example: bond2) <div></div> <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface>
PMAC Interface Alias	TVOE Bridge Name	TVOE Bridge Interface												
control	control	Fill in the appropriate value (default is bond0): <div></div> <TVOE_Control_Bridge_Interface>												
management	Fill in the appropriate value: (default is management) <div></div> <TVOE_Management_Bridge>	Fill in the appropriate value: (example: bond0.2) <div></div> <TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface>												
Netbackup (if applicable)	Fill in the appropriate value: (default is netbackup) <div></div> <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge>	Fill in the appropriate value: (example: bond2) <div></div> <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface>												

Step	Procedure	Result
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Login and launch the integrated remote console	<p>5. Log in to iLO in IE using password provided by application:</p> <pre>http://<management_server_iLO_ip></pre> <p>6. Click the Remote Console tab and launch the Integrated Remote Console on the server.</p> <p>7. Click Yes if the Security Alert pops up.</p>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Verify the Control Network	<p>Verify the control network by running the following command</p> <p>NOTE: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows the control bridge configured.</p> <pre># netAdm query --type=Bridge --name=control Bridge Name: control On Boot: yes Protocol: dhcp Persistent: yes Promiscuous: no Hwaddr: 00:24:81:fb:29:52 MTU: Bridge Interface: bond0</pre> <p>If the bridge has been configured, skip to the next step.</p> <p>If not, add and configure the bridge.</p> <p>NOTE: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The site information for this system will determine the network interfaces, (network devices, bonds, and bond enslaved devices), to configure.</p> <p>Add control bridge (<TVOE_Control_Bridge>).</p> <pre># netAdm add --device=bond0 --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100 Interface <TVOE_Control_Bridge_Interface> added # netAdm set --device=eth01 --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_Control_Bridge_Interface> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <ethernet_interface_1> updated # netAdm set --device=eth02 --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_Control_Bridge_Interface> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <ethernet_interface_2> updated # netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=control --bootproto=dhcp --onboot=yes --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_Control_Bridge_Interface></pre>

Step	Procedure	Result
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Create tagged control interface and bridge (optional)	<p>If you are using a tagged control network interface on this PMAC, then complete this step. Otherwise, skip on to the next step.</p> <pre># netAdm set --type=Bridge --name=control --delBridgeInt=bond0 Interface bond0 updated Bridge control updated # netAdm add --device=<TVOE_Control_Bridge_Interface> --onboot=yes Interface <TVOE_Control_Bridge_Interface> created # netAdm set --type=Bridge --name=control --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_Control_Bridge_Interface> --bootproto=none -- address=192.168.1.2 --netmask=255.255.255.0</pre>

Step	Procedure	Result
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Verify the Management Network	<p>Verify if the management network has been configured, by running the following command</p> <p>NOTE: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows the management bridge configured.</p> <pre># netAdm query --type=Bridge --name=management Bridge Name: management On Boot: yes Protocol: none IP Address: 10.240.4.86 Netmask: 255.255.255.0 Promiscuous: no Hwaddr: 00:24:81:fb:29:52 MTU: Bridge Interface: bond0.2</pre> <p>If the bridge has been configured as needed, skip to the next step.</p> <p>NOTE: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The site information for this system will determine the network interfaces, (network devices, bonds, and bond enslaved devices), to configure.</p> <p>EXAMPLE 1</p> <p>Create Management bridge using tagged interface on bond0.</p> <pre># netAdm add --device=<TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface> --onboot=yes # netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=<TVOE_Management_Bridge> --address=<Management_Server_TVOE_IP> -- netmask=<Management_Server_TVOE_Netmask> --onboot=yes --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface></pre> <p>EXAMPLE 2</p> <p>Create Management bridge using untagged interfaces (eth03 and eth04) with bonding (<TVOE_Management_Bridge>).</p> <pre># netAdm add --device=<TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface> --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100 Interface <TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface> added # netAdm set --device=<ethernet_interface_3> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <ethernet_interface_3> updated # netAdm set --device=<ethernet_interface_4> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <ethernet_interface_4> updated # netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=<TVOE_Management_Bridge> --bootproto=none --onboot=yes --address=<Management_Server_TVOE_IP> -- netmask=<Management_Server_TVOE_Netmask> --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface></pre>
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Verify the NetBackup Network (Optional)	<p>Verify the netbackup network. If the NetBackup feature is not needed, skip to the next step.</p> <p>NOTE: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows</p>

Step	Procedure	Result
		<p>the control bridge configured.</p> <pre># netAdm query --type=Bridge --name=netbackup Bridge Name: netbackup On Boot: yes Protocol: none IP Address: 10.240.6.2 Netmask: 255.255.255.0 Promiscuous: no Hwaddr: 00:24:81:fb:29:58 MTU: Bridge Interface: bond2</pre> <p>If the bridge has been configured as needed, skip to the next step.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The site information for this system will determine the network interfaces, (network devices, bonds, and bond enslaved devices), to configure. • The example below illustrates a TVOE management server configuration with the NetBackup feature enabled. The NetBackup network is configured with a non-default MTU size. • The MTU size must be consistent between a network bridge, device, or bond, and associated VLANs. <p>EXAMPLE 1</p> <p>Create NetBackup bridge using tagged interface on bond0.</p> <pre># netAdm add --device=<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface> # netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge> --onboot=yes --MTU=<NetBackup_MTU_size> --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface></pre> <p>EXAMPLE 2</p> <p>For this example, create NetBackup bridge using untagged interfaces (eth05 and eth06) and bonding. (<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge>).</p> <pre># netAdm add --device=<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface> --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100 --MTU=<NetBackup_MTU_size> Interface <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface> added # netAdm set --device=<ethernet_interface_5> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <ethernet_interface_5> updated # netAdm set --device=<ethernet_interface_6> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <ethernet_interface_6> updated</pre>

Step	Procedure	Result
		<pre># netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge> --onboot=yes --MTU=<NetBackup_MTU_size> --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface></pre>
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Verify the Default Route	<p>NOTE: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows the control bridge configured.</p> <pre># netAdm query --route=default --device=management Routes for TABLE: main and DEVICE: management * NETWORK: default GATEWAY: 10.240.4.1</pre> <p>If the route has been configured, skip to the next step.</p> <p>NOTE: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The site information for this system will determine the network interfaces, (network devices, bonds, and bond enslaved devices), to configure.</p> <p>For this example add default route on management network.</p> <pre># netAdm add --route=default --device=<TVOE_Management_Bridge> --gateway=<mgmt_gateway_address> Route to <TVOE_Management_Bridge> added</pre>
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Restart the network interfaces	<p>Restart the network interfaces</p> <pre># service network restart</pre>
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Set Hostname	<p>Set the server hostname by running the following:</p> <pre># su - platcfg</pre> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Server Configuration → Hostname → Edit. 2. Set TVOE Management Server hostname 3. Click OK. 4. Navigate out of Hostname
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Set the time zone and/or hardware clock	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Server Configuration → Time Zone. 2. Select Edit. 3. Set the time zone and/or hardware clock. 4. Click OK. 5. Navigate out of Server Configuration <pre>[Accept H/W clock for GMT]</pre>
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Set NTP	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Network Configuration → NTP. 2. Set NTP server IP address to point to the customer provided NTP server. 3. Click OK. 4. Exit platcfg.
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

C.2.4 Procedure c-4. PMAC Deployment Procedure

This procedure will deploy PMAC on the TVOE Host

PREREQUISITE: Procedure c-3. TVOE/Management Server Network Configuration has been completed.

NOTE: Use the following command to delete a TOVE guest (in the example below, the guest name is “pmac”):

```
# guestMgr --remove pmac
```

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact My Oracle Support and ask for ASSISTANCE.

Step	Procedure	Results
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Login and launch the integrated remote console	Log in to iLO in IE using password provided by application: <pre>http://<management_server_iLO_ip></pre> Click Remote Console and launch the Integrated Remote Console on the server. Click Yes if the Security Alert pops up.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Mount the PMAC media to the TVOE Management server	If using a DVD media, insert the pmac DVD into the optical drive and execute the following to get the Optical Drive letter and mount it: <pre># getCDROM DV-W28E-RW sr0 /dev/sr0 # mount -t iso9660 /dev/sr0 /mnt/upgrade/</pre> If using an ISO image, run the following to mount it: <pre># mount -o loop ISO_FILENAME.iso /mnt/upgrade</pre>

Step	Procedure	Results
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: deploy PMAC	<p>Using the pmac-deploy script, deploy the PMAC instance using the configuration captured during the site survey.</p> <pre># cd /mnt/upgrade/upgrade</pre> <p>If deploying PMAC without netbackup feature, run the following command:</p> <pre># ./pmac-deploy --guest=<PMAC_Name> --hostname=<PMAC_Name> --controlBridge=<TVOE_Control_Bridge> --controlIP=<PMAC_Control_ip_address> --controlNM=<PMAC_Control_netmask> --managementBridge=<PMAC_Management_Bridge> --managementIP=<PMAC_Management_ip_address> --managementNM=<PMAC_Management_netmask> --routeGW=<PMAC_Management_gateway_address> --ntpserver=<TVOE_Management_server_ip_address></pre> <p>If deploying PMAC with netbackup feature, run the following command:</p> <pre># ./pmac-deploy --guest=<PMAC_Name> --hostname=<PMAC_Name> --controlBridge=<TVOE_Control_Bridge> --controlIP=<PMAC_Control_ip_address> --controlNM=<PMAC_Control_netmask> --managementBridge=<PMAC_Management_Bridge> --managementIP=<PMAC_Management_ip_address> --managementNM=<PMAC_Management_netmask> --routeGW=<PMAC_Management_gateway_address> --ntpserver=<TVOE_Management_server_ip_address> --bridge=<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge> --nic=netbackup</pre> <p>The PMAC will deploy and boot. The management and control network will come up based on the settings that were provided to the pmac-deploy script.</p>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Unmount the media	<p>The media should auto-unmount, if it does not, unmount the media using the following command:</p> <pre># cd / # umount /mnt/upgrade</pre> <p>If using a DVD media, remove it from the optical drive.</p>

Step	Procedure	Results
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: SSH into the Management Server	<p>Using an SSH client such as putty, ssh to the TVOE host using root credentials.</p> <p>Login using <code>virsh</code>, and wait until you see the login prompt :</p> <pre> virsh # list Id Name State ----- 13 myTPD running 20 pmacdev7 running virsh # console pmacdev7 [Output Removed] Starting ntdMgr: [OK] Starting atd: [OK] 'TPD Up' notification(s) already sent: [OK] upstart: Starting tpdProvd... upstart: tpdProvd started. CentOS release 6.2 (Final) Kernel 2.6.32-220.17.1.el6prere16.0.0_80.14.0.x86_64 on an x86_64 pmacdev7 login: </pre>
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Set the PMAC timezone	<p>Determine the TimeZone to be used for the PMAC</p> <p>NOTE: Valid time zones can be found on the server in the directory <code>/usr/share/zoneinfo</code>. Only the time zones within the sub-directories (i.e. America, Africa, Pacific, Mexico, etc.....) are valid with <code>platcfg</code>.</p> <pre># set_pmac_tz.pl <timezone></pre> <p>For example</p> <pre># set_pmac_tz.pl America/New_York</pre> <p>Verify that the timezone has been updated:</p> <pre># date</pre> <p>NOTE: CHECK PMAC DATE WITH TVOE DATE – NEED TO MATCH</p>
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	Management server iLO: Reboot the server	<p>Reboot the server by running:</p> <pre># init 6</pre>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

C.2.5 Procedure c-5. Configure the PMAC Server

This procedure will provide PMAC configuration using the web interface.

PREREQUISITE: Procedure c-4. PMAC Deployment Procedure has been completed.

NOTES:

- The installer must be knowledgeable of the network. If you make mistake, click Cancel and try again. The finish step may take longer time because it reconfigures the network and attempts to connect may fail.
- After you have completed an initialization, the network parameters can no longer be changed through the GUI. If you need to reset any of the network information, you must run the `pmacadm resetProfileConfig` command in the PMAC shell. This will delete the existing configuration and allow you to run through the initialization wizard again. Keep in mind that the reset will not run until all provisioned enclosures and cabinets are deleted

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

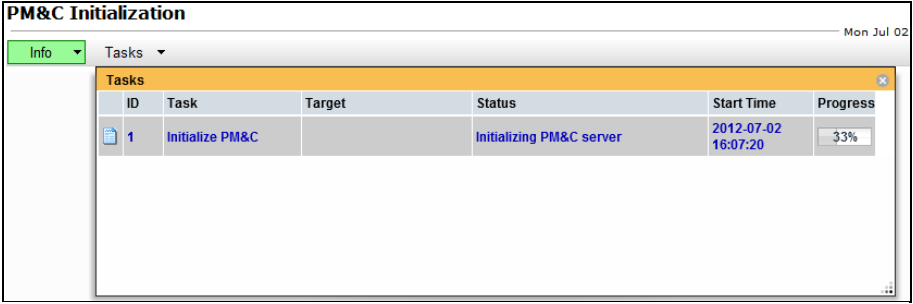
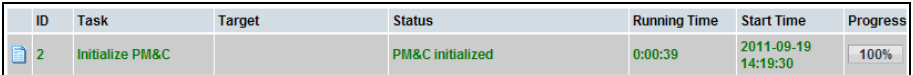
If this procedure fails, contact My Oracle Support and ask for ASSISTANCE.

Step	Procedure	Results
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC GUI: Load GUI initialization wizard	<div><div>5. Open web browser and enter: <code>http://<management_network_ip>/gui</code></div><div>6. Login as pmacadmin user.</div><div></div></div>

Step	Procedure	Results																																				
2	<div><div></div><div>PMAC GUI: Select a profile</div></div>	<div><div>The first screen will be similar to image below.</div><div><div>Profiles</div><table><thead><tr><th>File Name</th><th>Name</th><th>Comment</th><th>Version</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>TVOE</td><td>PM&C TVOE Guest</td><td>Manage systems from a TVOE hosted PM&C</td><td>6.0.0</td></tr></tbody></table><div>Initialize</div></div><div>Select the TVOE profile and click on Initialize, the following features screen will display</div><div><table><thead><tr><th>Feature</th><th>Description</th><th>Role</th><th>Enabled</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>DEVICE.NETWORK.NETBOOT</td><td>Network device PXE initialization</td><td>control</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td></tr><tr><td>DEVICE.NTP</td><td>PM&C as a time server</td><td>management</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td></tr><tr><td>SERVER.IPM</td><td>Server Initial Product Manufacturing</td><td>control</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td></tr><tr><td>PMAC.MANAGED</td><td>Remote management of PM&C server</td><td>management</td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr><tr><td>PMAC.REMOTE.BACKUP</td><td>Remote server for backup</td><td>management</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td></tr><tr><td>PMAC.NETBACKUP</td><td>NetBackup client</td><td>management</td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr></tbody></table><div>Add Role</div></div><div>Make sure that the role for DEVICE.NETWORK.NETBOOT and SERVER.IPM are set to control while the roles for all other features is set to management.</div><div>Also make sure that the enabled checkbox is checked for the following:</div><div><div>DEVICE.NETWORK.NETBOOT</div><div>DEVICE.NTP</div><div>PMAC.REMOTE.BACKUP</div><div>SERVER:IPM</div><div>PMAC.NETBACK (only if NetBackup is used)</div></div><div>And click on Next.</div><div><div>Cancel</div><div>Next</div></div></div>	File Name	Name	Comment	Version	TVOE	PM&C TVOE Guest	Manage systems from a TVOE hosted PM&C	6.0.0	Feature	Description	Role	Enabled	DEVICE.NETWORK.NETBOOT	Network device PXE initialization	control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DEVICE.NTP	PM&C as a time server	management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SERVER.IPM	Server Initial Product Manufacturing	control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PMAC.MANAGED	Remote management of PM&C server	management	<input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC.REMOTE.BACKUP	Remote server for backup	management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PMAC.NETBACKUP	NetBackup client	management	<input type="checkbox"/>
File Name	Name	Comment	Version																																			
TVOE	PM&C TVOE Guest	Manage systems from a TVOE hosted PM&C	6.0.0																																			
Feature	Description	Role	Enabled																																			
DEVICE.NETWORK.NETBOOT	Network device PXE initialization	control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																																			
DEVICE.NTP	PM&C as a time server	management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																																			
SERVER.IPM	Server Initial Product Manufacturing	control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																																			
PMAC.MANAGED	Remote management of PM&C server	management	<input type="checkbox"/>																																			
PMAC.REMOTE.BACKUP	Remote server for backup	management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																																			
PMAC.NETBACKUP	NetBackup client	management	<input type="checkbox"/>																																			
3	<div><div></div><div>PMAC GUI: Network Description</div></div>	<div><div>You will see this default screen similar to:</div><div><table><thead><tr><th>Network IP</th><th>Network Mask</th><th>VLAN</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>192.168.3.0</td><td>255.255.255.0</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>10.240.9.128</td><td>255.255.255.192</td><td>0</td></tr></tbody></table><div><div>Add</div><div>Delete</div></div></div><div>Enter the Network IPs and Netmasks for the control and Management Networks and set their VLAN IDs to 0.</div><div>Click Next.</div></div>	Network IP	Network Mask	VLAN	192.168.3.0	255.255.255.0	0	10.240.9.128	255.255.255.192	0																											
Network IP	Network Mask	VLAN																																				
192.168.3.0	255.255.255.0	0																																				
10.240.9.128	255.255.255.192	0																																				

Step	Procedure	Results																
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC GUI: Network Roles	<p>You will see this default screen similar to:</p> <table><thead><tr><th>Network IP</th><th>Network Mask</th><th>Role</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>192.168.3.0</td><td>255.255.255.0</td><td>control</td></tr><tr><td>10.240.9.128</td><td>255.255.255.192</td><td>management</td></tr></tbody></table> <div><div>Add</div><div>Delete</div></div> <p>Verify the Roles and update if necessary.</p> <p>Click Next.</p>	Network IP	Network Mask	Role	192.168.3.0	255.255.255.0	control	10.240.9.128	255.255.255.192	management							
Network IP	Network Mask	Role																
192.168.3.0	255.255.255.0	control																
10.240.9.128	255.255.255.192	management																
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC GUI: Network Interface	<p>You will see this default screen similar to:</p> <table><thead><tr><th>Device</th><th>IP Address</th><th>Description</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>control</td><td>192.168.3.1</td><td>Control network for managed servers</td></tr><tr><td>management</td><td>10.240.9.190</td><td>Management of system devices</td></tr></tbody></table> <div><div>Add</div><div>Delete</div></div> <p>Verify the IP addresses for each Device and update if necessary.</p> <p>Click Next.</p>	Device	IP Address	Description	control	192.168.3.1	Control network for managed servers	management	10.240.9.190	Management of system devices							
Device	IP Address	Description																
control	192.168.3.1	Control network for managed servers																
management	10.240.9.190	Management of system devices																
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC GUI: Network Route	<p>You will see this default screen similar to:</p> <table><thead><tr><th>Device</th><th>Destination IP</th><th>Network Mask</th><th>Gateway IP</th></tr></thead><tbody></tbody></table> <div><div>Add</div><div>Delete</div></div> <p>Click Add to create new routes. At a minimum a default route should be defined. The following screen will be displayed.</p> <p>For the default route, select the “management” Device, enter “0.0.0.0” for both Destination Address and Destination Mask, and enter the gateway IP under Gateway as shown below</p> <table><tbody><tr><td>Device:</td><td>management</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Destination Address:</td><td colspan="2">0.0.0.0</td></tr><tr><td>Destination Mask:</td><td colspan="2">0.0.0.0</td></tr><tr><td>Gateway:</td><td colspan="2">10.240.9.131</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>For default routes, use the unspecified address (0.0.0.0) for both destination address and mask</p> <div><div>Cancel</div><div>Add Route</div></div> <p>Click Add Route. Repeat to define more route.</p> <p>Click Next when done.</p>	Device	Destination IP	Network Mask	Gateway IP	Device:	management		Destination Address:	0.0.0.0		Destination Mask:	0.0.0.0		Gateway:	10.240.9.131	
Device	Destination IP	Network Mask	Gateway IP															
Device:	management																	
Destination Address:	0.0.0.0																	
Destination Mask:	0.0.0.0																	
Gateway:	10.240.9.131																	

Step	Procedure	Results																																							
7	<div><div></div><div>PMAC GUI: DHCP Ranges</div></div>	<div><div>You will see this default screen similar to:</div><div><div><div>DHCP Ranges</div><div><div><div>Start DHCP</div><div>End DHCP</div></div><div><div>192.168.3.1</div><div>192.168.3.254</div></div><div><div>Add</div><div>Delete</div></div></div></div><div><div><div>Cancel</div><div>Next</div></div></div><div>Set address range: Start - 192.168.1.5 End – 192.168.1.254. [192.168.1.1 – 192.168.1.4 are reserved for PMAC]</div><div>If you need to define additional DHCP ranges, press Add (most deployments do not require additional DHCP Ranges, Otherwise, click Next.</div></div></div>																																							
8	<div><div></div><div>PMAC GUI: Settings summary</div></div>	<div><div>The following summary screen will be displayed.</div><div><div><div><div>▼ Network Description</div><table><tr><th>Network IP</th><th>Network Mask</th><th>VLAN</th></tr><tr><td>192.168.3.0</td><td>255.255.255.0</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>10.240.9.128</td><td>255.255.255.192</td><td>0</td></tr></table></div><div><div>▼ Network and Roles Description</div><table><tr><th>Network IP</th><th>Network Mask</th><th>Role</th></tr><tr><td>192.168.3.0</td><td>255.255.255.0</td><td>control</td></tr><tr><td>10.240.9.128</td><td>255.255.255.192</td><td>management</td></tr></table></div><div><div>▼ Network Interface Description</div><table><tr><th>Device</th><th>IP Address</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>control</td><td>192.168.3.1</td><td>Control network for managed servers</td></tr><tr><td>management</td><td>10.240.9.190</td><td>Management of system devices</td></tr></table></div><div><div>▼ Route Configuration</div><table><tr><th>Device</th><th>Destination IP</th><th>Network Mask</th><th>Gateway IP</th></tr><tr><td>management</td><td>0.0.0.0</td><td>0.0.0.0</td><td>10.240.9.131</td></tr></table></div><div><div>▼ DHCP Configuration</div><table><tr><th>Start DHCP</th><th>End DHCP</th></tr><tr><td>192.168.3.1</td><td>192.168.3.254</td></tr></table></div></div></div><div>Verify the values and click Finish.</div></div>	Network IP	Network Mask	VLAN	192.168.3.0	255.255.255.0	0	10.240.9.128	255.255.255.192	0	Network IP	Network Mask	Role	192.168.3.0	255.255.255.0	control	10.240.9.128	255.255.255.192	management	Device	IP Address	Description	control	192.168.3.1	Control network for managed servers	management	10.240.9.190	Management of system devices	Device	Destination IP	Network Mask	Gateway IP	management	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	10.240.9.131	Start DHCP	End DHCP	192.168.3.1	192.168.3.254
Network IP	Network Mask	VLAN																																							
192.168.3.0	255.255.255.0	0																																							
10.240.9.128	255.255.255.192	0																																							
Network IP	Network Mask	Role																																							
192.168.3.0	255.255.255.0	control																																							
10.240.9.128	255.255.255.192	management																																							
Device	IP Address	Description																																							
control	192.168.3.1	Control network for managed servers																																							
management	10.240.9.190	Management of system devices																																							
Device	Destination IP	Network Mask	Gateway IP																																						
management	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	10.240.9.131																																						
Start DHCP	End DHCP																																								
192.168.3.1	192.168.3.254																																								

Step	Procedure	Results
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC GUI: Complete the configuration	<p>The following summary screen will be displayed, click on Tasks to view the Initialization Progress.</p>  <p>Click Task Monitoring for status of this task.</p>  <p>Wait until the Progress bar turns green, that signifies that the PMAC Initialization was successful.</p>
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	Add Cabinet and Enclosure	<p>Add the Cabinets and Enclosures to be managed by this PMAC.</p> <p>Wait for these tasks to complete.</p>
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify Software and Hardware Inventory	<p>Open GUI forms for Hardware and Software Inventory.</p> <p>Confirm that the hardware and software are correctly shown for the added Enclosures.</p>
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	Add ISO Images to Storage	<p>Add the software ISO images needed for both 7.5 and 9.x.</p> <p>Add the Misc Firmware ISO image.</p>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

C.2.6 Procedure c-6. Define netConfig Repository, and Store Switch Configuration Backups

This procedure configures the netConfig repository, and stores the switch config backups.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

Should this procedure fail, contact My Oracle Support and ask for UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.

Step	Procedure	Results
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Setup conserver serial access on TVOE Host	<p>Management Server: Setup conserver serial access for switch1A and switch1B and open the firewall to allow for future tftp use in this procedure.</p> <p>NOTE: If there are no aggregation switches in this deployment, skip to the next step.</p> <p>From Management Server/TVOE Host, configure the conserver service to enable serial access to the switches:</p> <p>For switch1A:</p> <pre># conserverAdm --addConsole --name=switch1A_console --device=/dev/ttyS4</pre> <p>For switch1B:</p> <pre># conserverAdm --addConsole --name=switch1B_console --device=/dev/ttyS5</pre> <p>Open the conserver port on the firewall of the TVOE Management Server:</p> <pre># iptables -I INPUT -s 10.240.238.4/255.255.255.255 -p all -j ACCEPT # service iptables save</pre> <p>You should be returned to the command line prompt. If so, continue to the next step; if not, contact Customer Care Center for assistance.</p>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Login to the PMAC guest console	<p>TVOE Management Server:</p> <pre># virsh list # virsh console <PMAC_Name></pre>

Step	Procedure	Results
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Add 4948 switch Devices on Virtual PMAC	<p>NOTE: If there are no aggregation switches in this deployment, skip to the next step.</p> <pre># netConfig --repo listDevices # netConfig --repo addDevice name=switch1A --reuseCredentials Device Vendor? Cisco Device Model? 4948E Should the init oob adapter be added (y/n)? y Adding consoleInit protocol for switch1A using oob... What is the name of the service used for OOB access? console_service What is the name of the console for OOB access? switch1A_console What is the device console password? <switch_console_password> Verify Password: <switch_console_password> What is the platform access username? <switch_platform_username> What is the platform user password? <switch_platform_password> Verify Password: <switch_platform_password> What is the device privileged mode password? <switch_enable_password> Verify Password: <switch_enable_password> Should the live network adapter be added (y/n)? y Adding cli protocol for switch1A using network... What is the address used for network device access? <switch1A_mgmtVLAN_ip_address> Should the live oob adapter be added (y/n)? y Adding cli protocol for switch1A using oob... OOB device access already set: console_service Device named switch1A successfully added.</pre> <p>REPEAT for other switches</p> <p>NOTE: The platform user password and the privileged mode password must be the SAME.</p>

Step	Procedure	Results
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	IF Needed – reset 6120 switch login credentials and assign hostname	<p>NetConfig tool requires certain additional setup steps on the switches.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unique hostname • ssh enabled • The password for operation and manager access must be the same. <p>PMAC CONSOLE: Modify the logon credentials for all 6120 switches</p> <p>For ALL HP6120XG switches in the deployment, ssh or telnet to the switch using the current login credentials. If ssh is already enabled, telnet will then be automatically disabled. i.e. only one option will work. If ssh does not work, you will need to enable it.</p> <p>On the switch, enter config mode:</p> <pre>6120XG_1002# config 6120XG_1002(config)# hostname <switch_hostname> 6120XG_1002(config)# password manager user-name <manager_user_name> plaintext <password> 6120XG_1002(config)# password operator user-name <operator_user_name> plaintext <password> 6120XG_1002(config)# ip ssh filetransfer 6120XG_1002(config)# exit 6120XG_1002# write mem</pre> <p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <password> must be the same for both users. • standard <manager_user_name> = manager • standard <operator_user_name> = operator • switch_hostname = a unique name, which will also be the device name in netConfig

Step	Procedure	Results
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	Add 6120 switch Devices on Virtual PMAC	<pre> # netConfig --repo listDevices # netConfig --repo addDevice name=<switch_hostname> --reuseCredentials Device Vendor? HP Device Model? 6120 Should the live network adapter be added (y/n)? y Adding cli protocol for 6120XG_IOBAY1 using network... What is the address used for network device access? <enclosure_switch_IP> What is the platform access username? <manager_user_name> What is the platform user password? <6120_password> Verify Password: <6120_password> What is the device privileged mode password? <6120_password> Verify Password: <6120_password> Should the live oob adapter be added (y/n)? n Should the init network adapter be added (y/n)? y Adding sshInit protocol for SLAK_6120XG_Enc2b using network... Network device access already set: <enclosure_switch_IP> What is the platform access username? root What is the platform user password? <pmac_root_password> Verify password: <pmac_root_password> What is the device privileged mode password? Verify password: <6120_password> Device named SLAK_6120XG_Enc2b successfully added. REPEAT for other switches </pre>

Step	Procedure	Results
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	Configure console_service on Virtual pmac	<p>PMAC Console: Setup netConfig repository with necessary console information.</p> <p>NOTE: If there are no aggregation switches in this deployment, skip to the next step.</p> <p>Use netConfig to delete the console_service prior to the migration:</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --repo deleteService name=console_service</pre> <p>Use netConfig to create a repository entry that will use the conserver service that was configured in the previous steps. This command will give the user several prompts. The prompts with <variables> as the answers are site specific that the user MUST modify. Other prompts that don't have a <variable> as an answer must be entered EXACTLY as they are shown here.</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --repo addService name=console_service Service type? (tftp, ssh, conserver, oa) conserver Service host? <management_server_mgmtVLAN_ip_address> Enter an option name (q to cancel): user Enter a value for user: platcfg Enter an option name(q to cancel): password Enter a value for password: <platcfg_password> Verify password: <platcfg_password> Enter an option name(q to cancel): q Add service for console_service successful</pre> <p>To check that you entered the information correctly, use the following command:</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --repo showService name=console_service</pre> <p>Check the output, which will be similar to the one shown below:</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --repo showService name=console_service Services: Service Name: console_service Type: conserver Host: 10.240.8.4 Options: password: D8396824B3B2B9EE user: platcfg [root@pmac approximatelty]#</pre>

Step	Procedure	Results
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	Configure tftp_service on Virtual PMAC	<p>PMAC Console: Check for the tftp_service, and add it if necessary</p> <p>NOTE: If there are no aggregation switches in this deployment, skip to the next step.</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --repo listServices</pre> <p>SAMPE OUTPUT</p> <pre>Services: Service Name: tftp_service Type: tftp Host: 10.240.8.4 Options: dir: /var/TKLC/smac/image</pre> <p>If the tftp_service IS listed in the output of 'listServices' skip to the next step.</p> <p>If the tftp_service is NOT listed in the output of 'listServices' add the service:</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --repo addService name=tftp_service Service type? (tftp, ssh, conserver, oa) tftp Service host? <pmac_mgmtVLAN_ip_address> Enter an option name (q to cancel): dir Enter a value for dir: /var/TKLC/smac/image/ Enter an option name(q to cancel): q Add service for tftp_service successful</pre> <p>To check that you entered the information correctly, use the following command:</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --repo showService name=tftp_service</pre> <p>Check the output, which will be similar to the one shown below</p> <p>NOTE: Only the tftp service info has been shown in this example. If the previous step and this step were done correctly, both the console_service and tftp_service entries would show up.</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --repo showService name=tftp_service Services: Service Name: tftp_service Type: tftp Host: 10.240.8.4 Options: dir: /var/TKLC/smac/image [root@pmac approximatelty]#</pre>

Step	Procedure	Results
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	Configure ssh_service on Virtual PMAC	<p>PMAC Console: Check for the ssh_service, and add it if necessary</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --repo listServices</pre> <p>SAMPLE OUTPUT</p> <pre>Services: Service Name: ssh_service Type: ssh Host: 10.240.8.4 Options: password: D5477140ECECECEB user: root</pre> <p>If the ssh_service IS listed in the output of 'listServices' skip to the next step.</p> <p>If the ssh_service is NOT listed in the output of 'listServices' add the service:</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --repo addService name=ssh_service Service type? (tftp, ssh, conserver, oa) ssh Service host? <pmac_mgmtVLAN_ip_address> Enter an option name <q to cancel>: user Enter the value for user: root Enter an option name <q to cancel>: password Enter the value for password: <pmac_root_password> Verify Password: <pmac_root_password> Enter an option name <q to cancel>: q Add service for ssh_service successful [root@pmac approximatelty]#</pre> <p>To ensure that you entered the information correctly, use the following command and inspect the output, which will be similar to the one shown below.</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --repo showService name=ssh_service Service Name: ssh_service Type: ssh Host: 10.250.62.85 Options: password: C20F7D639AE7E7 user: root [root@pmac approximatelty]#</pre>
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify switch access.	<p>PMAC CONSOLE: Verify netConfig access to HP6120 switches</p> <p>Verify that netConfig can access all HP6120 switches:</p> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig getVersion --device=<switch_name></pre> <p>SAMPLE OUTPUT:</p> <pre>Firmware Version: Z.14.32</pre> <p>If this step fails, see the following step to re-set the switch credentials.</p>

Step	Procedure	Results
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	Backup all 4948 switches	<pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# mkdir -p /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/switch/backup</pre> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# cd /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/switch/backup</pre> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --device=<switch_name> backupConfiguration service=ssh_service filename=<switch_name>-backup</pre> REPEAT command for each switch
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	Backup all 6120 switches	<pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# cd /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/switch/backup</pre> <pre>[root@pmac approximatelty]# netConfig --device=<switch_name> backupConfiguration service=ssh_service filename=<switch_name>-backup</pre> REPEAT command for each switch
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	End PMAC console session. Close iLO console session.	Press <ctrl>] to exit the PMAC guest console. In the iLO console session, execute: <pre># exit</pre>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

APPENDIX D. BACKUP CONFIG OF THE SWITCHES TO PMAC

The following procedures will backup the switch configurations to the PMAC, so these are available for future recovery actions or replacement activities.

D.1 Backup 6120XG Enclosure Switch

This procedure should be executed after every change to the switch configuration.

Prerequisites:

- IPM DL360 or DL380 Server must be completed
- Install PMAC on DL360 or DL380 must be completed
- Configure HP 6120XG switch (netConfig)

Procedure Reference Tables:

Variable	Value
<switch_name>	hostname of the switch

1. Verify netConfig Devices and Services are setup

```
# netConfig --repo listDevices
Devices: <the 2 enclosure switches>

# netConfig --repo listServices
Services: <the ssh_service>
```

If Devices and Services are not setup, see procedure to setup netBackup Devices and Services before proceeding.

2. Verify netConfig is setup

Verify switch is at least initialized correctly, and verify connectivity, by verifying hostname:

```
# netConfig --device=<switch_name> getHostname
Hostname: 6120_IOBAY3
```

NOTE: The value beside Hostname should be the same as the <switch_name> variable.

3. Verify the ssh service is configured by running the netConfig --repo showService name=ssh_service and look for ssh service.

```
# netConfig --repo showService name=ssh_service
Service Name: ssh_service
Type: ssh
Host: 10.240.8.4
Options:
password: C20F7D639AE7E7
user: root
```

4. Ensure the directory where the backups will be stored exists.

```
# ls -l /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/switch/backup
```

If you receive an error such as the following:

```
-bash: ls: /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/switch/backup: No such file or directory
```

Then the directory must be created by issuing the following command

```
# mkdir -p /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/switch/backup
```

5. Navigate to the backup directory.

```
# cd /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/switch/backup
```

6. Execute the backup command

```
# netConfig --device=<switch_name> backupConfiguration service=ssh_service
filename=<switch_name>-backup
```

7. Verify switch configuration was backed up by cat <switch_name> and inspecting its contents to ensure it reflects the latest known good switch configurations.

```
# ls <switch_name>-backup*
# cat <switch_name>-backup
```

8. Go back to the home directory

```
# cd approximately
```

9. Repeat steps 2, 5-8 for each HP 6120XG switch to be backed up.

D.2 Backup Cisco 4948/4948E/4948E-F Aggregation Switch

This procedure should be executed after every change to the switch configuration.

Oracle Provided Aggregation Switch Prerequisites for c-Class system:

- IPM DL360 or DL380 Server must be completed
- Install PMAC on DL360 or DL380 must be completed
- Configure Cisco 4948/4948E/4948E-F aggregation switches (c-Class system) (netConfig)

Procedure Reference Tables:

Variable	Value
<switch_backup_user> (also needed in switch configuration procedure)	
<switch_backup_user_password> (also needed in switch configuration procedure)	
<switch_name>	hostname of the switch
<switch_backup_directory>	/usr/TKLC/smac/etc/switch/backup

1. Verify switch is at least initialized correctly and connectivity to the switch by verifying hostname

```
# netConfig --device=<switch_name> getHostname
Hostname: switch1A
```

NOTE: The value beside "Hostname:" should be the same as the <switch_name> variable.

2. Run command "netConfig --repo showService name=ssh_service" and look for ssh service.

```
# netConfig --repo showService name=ssh_service
Service Name: ssh_service
Type: ssh
Host: 10.250.62.85
Options:
password: C20F7D639AE7E7
user: root
```

In the ssh_service parameters, the value for 'user:' will be the value for the variable <switch_backup_user>.

3. Navigate to the <switch_backup_user> home directory.

```
# cd approximately <switch_backup_user>
```

Verify your location on the server

```
# pwd
```

```
/some/user/home/dir/path
```

4. Execute the backup command

```
# netConfig --device=<switch_name> backupConfiguration service=ssh_service
```

```
filename=<switch_name>-backup
```

5. Verify switch configuration was backed up by cat <switch_name>-backup and inspect its contents to ensure it reflects the latest known good switch configurations. Then, copy the files over to the backup directory.

```
# ls <switch_name>-backup*
```

```
# cat <switch_name>-backup
```

```
# mv <switch_name>-backup* <switch_backup_directory>/
```

6. Repeat steps 1, 3-5 for each switch to be backed up.

APPENDIX E. BACKOUT OF PMAC 5.0 TO PMAC 3.2

The following procedure will re-install the PMAC 3.2 application from backups.

E.1 Procedure 29. PMAC Backout Procedure

This procedure backs out the PMAC 5.0 software by reinstalling the PMAC 3.x software and recovering the data.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

Should this procedure fail, contact My Oracle Support and ask for UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.

Step	Procedure	Results
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Install TPD 4.0 and PMAC on the Management Server.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">PM the Management Server using the instructions and installation disks: TPD.install-4.2.1_70.71.0-CentOS5.5-i386 PMAC -- 872-2288-103-3.2.2_31.13.0-i386.isoPerform the Installation and Setup of the PMAC Server procedure in the Policy System Platform Software Installation Guide: 910-6291-001 Rev B NOTE: Reconfigure the hostname of this server to be the same as that of the system manager it is replacing.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Restore the configuration data.	Restore the PMAC 3.2 configuration data using the Restore PMAC Server From Backup Media procedure in <i>PMAC 3x/4x Disaster Recovery</i> , 909-1638-001 Rev B, September 2012
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify Inventory Views	Verify PMAC sync with Enclosures: <ul style="list-style-type: none">Hardware InventorySoftware Inventory
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify Inventory Views	Add Software Images to Image Storage on the PMAC server Perform the procedure in the <i>Policy System Platform Software Installation Guide</i> : 910-6291-001 Rev B
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	Execute the system healthcheck.	Perform the PMAC Healthcheck procedures. If any error or failure conditions are discovered, contact My Oracle Support to work to resolve the failure conditions.
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

APPENDIX F. TRANSFER FILES OR ISO FILES TO PMAC 5.0

Below discussion of how transfer files/ISO files from a USB key (FAT32) to the PMAC (Policy Management 9.x).

When the USB key is inserted to PMAC, it is mounted to /media (automatic).

- Login to the TVOE shell.
- `cd` to /media/sdb1/<directory on the USB that you need>.

Two options:

- Copy the files to the PMAC environment using the `scp` command.
 - `scp <file> pmac:/var/TKLC/upgrade`

Note: Adding a /etc/hosts entry for pmac on the TVOE makes this easier to do.

Please note that the /var/TKLC/upgrade partition has a space limit of about 3G.

```
[root@pmacTVOE238 ~]# sd 3:0:0:0: [sdb] Assuming drive cache: write through
sd 3:0:0:0: [sdb] Assuming drive cache: write through
sd 3:0:0:0: [sdb] Assuming drive cache: write through

[root@pmacTVOE238 ~]# cd /media
-bash: cd: /media: No such file or directory
[root@pmacTVOE238 ~]# cd /media
[root@pmacTVOE238 media]# ls
sdb1
[root@pmacTVOE238 media]# cd sdb1
[root@pmacTVOE238 sdb1]# ls
7.6.4 9.0 Other
[root@pmacTVOE238 sdb1]# cd 9.0
[root@pmacTVOE238 9.0]# ls
909-1620-001.pdf 909-2200-001.docx 909-2209-001.pdf FW PMAC Policy UP006207_1-3.docx
[root@pmacTVOE238 9.0]# cd Policy
[root@pmacTVOE238 Policy]# ls
872-2472-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mra-x86_64.iso      872-2475-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mra-x86_64.iso
872-2473-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mpe-x86_64.iso      TPD.install-5.1.0_73.3.0-CentOS5.8-x86_64.iso
872-2474-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mpe-li-x86_64.iso
[root@pmacTVOE238 Policy]# scp *mra* pmac:/var/TKLC/upgrade
The authenticity of host 'pmac (10.240.238.4)' can't be established.
RSA key fingerprint is 75:8f:12:5f:c3:c5:33:68:57:3e:ff:aa:35:d6:08:51.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes
Warning: Permanently added 'pmac,10.240.238.4' (RSA) to the list of known hosts.
root@pmac's password:
872-2475-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mra-x86_64.iso      17% 118MB 23.4MB/s 00:23 ET
```

- `ftp` ISO files from TVOE to pmac repository directory
 - Using `sftp`, connect to the PMAC management server

```
> sftp pmacftpusr@<pmac_management_network_ip>
> put <image>.iso
```
 - After the image transfer is 100% complete, close the connection

```
> quit
```

File is placed in /var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpusr/directory.

```
[root@pmacTVOE238 Policy]# pwd
/media/sdb1/9.0/Policy
[root@pmacTVOE238 Policy]# ls
872-2472-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mra-x86_64.iso      872-2475-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mra-x86_64.iso
872-2473-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mpe-x86_64.iso      TPD.install-5.1.0_73.3.0-CentOS5.8-x86_64.iso
872-2474-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mpe-li-x86_64.iso
[root@pmacTVOE238 Policy]# sftp pmacftpusr@pmac
Connecting to pmac...
pmacftpusr@pmac's password:
sftp> put *mra*
Uploading 872-2475-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mra-x86_64.iso to /home/smacftpusr/872-2475-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mra-x86_64.iso
sftp> quit
[root@pmacTVOE238 Policy]#
```

```
root@pmac238:/var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpusr
login as: root
root@10.240.238.4's password:
Access denied
root@10.240.238.4's password:
Last login: Wed Nov 7 10:25:48 2012 from 10.25.110.73
[root@pmac238 ~]# cd /var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpusr/
[root@pmac238 smacftpusr]# ls
872-2475-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mra-x86_64.iso
[root@pmac238 smacftpusr]# ls
872-2475-102-9.0.0_11.1.0-mra-x86_64.iso
[root@pmac238 smacftpusr]#
```

Add Image to PMAC Repository:

Add Software Image

Help

Wed Nov 07 11:19:52 2012 EST

Images may be added from any of these sources:

- Tekelec-provided media in the PM&C host's CD/DVD drive (See Note)
- USB media attached to the PM&C's host (See Note)
- External mounts. Prefix the directory with "extfile://".
- These local search paths:
 - /var/TKLC/upgrade/*.iso
 - /var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpusr/*.iso

Note: CD and USB images mounted on PM&C's VM host must first be made accessible to the PM&C VM guest. To do this, go to the Media tab of the PM&C guest's View VM Guest page.

Path:

Description:

APPENDIX G. ADDING ISO IMAGES TO THE PMAC FROM MEDIA

This procedure provides the steps for adding ISO images to the PMAC repository from Media.

1. **PMAC GUI:** Login

Open web browser and enter:

Error! Hyperlink reference not valid.>

Login as pmacadmin user.

2. **PMAC GUI:** Attach the software image to the PMAC guest

If the image is on a CD or USB device, continue with this step.

In the PMAC GUI, nevigat to **Main Menu > VM Managmenet..** In the VM Entities list, select the PMAC guest. On the resulting View VM Guest page, select the **Media** tab.

Under the **Media** tab, find the ISO image in the Available Media list, and click **Attach**.

After a pause, the image will appear in the Attached Media list.

3. **PMAC GUI:** Navigate to Manage Software Images

Navigate to **Main Menu > Software > Manage Software Images**

4. **PMAC GUI:**Add image

Click **Add Image**.

5. **PMAC GUI:** Add the ISO image to the PMAC image repository.

Select an image to add:

- If in Step 1 the image was transferred to PMAC via sftp it will appear in the list as a local file /var/TKLC/....
- If the image was supplied on a CD or a USB drive, it will appear as a virtual device (device://...). These devices are assigned in numerical order as CD and USB images become available on the Management Server. The first virtual device is reserved for internal use by TVOE and PMAC; therefore, the ISO image of interest is normally present on the second device, "device://dev/sr1". If one or more CD or USB-based images were already present on the Management Server before you started this procedure, choose a correspondingly higher device number.

Enter an appropriate image description and click **Add New Image**.

6. **PMAC GUI** Monitor the Add Image status

The Manage Software Images page is then redisplayed with a new background task entry in the table at the bottom of the page.

7. **PMAC GUI** Wait until the Add Image task finishes

When the task is complete, its text changes to green and its Progress column indicates "100%".

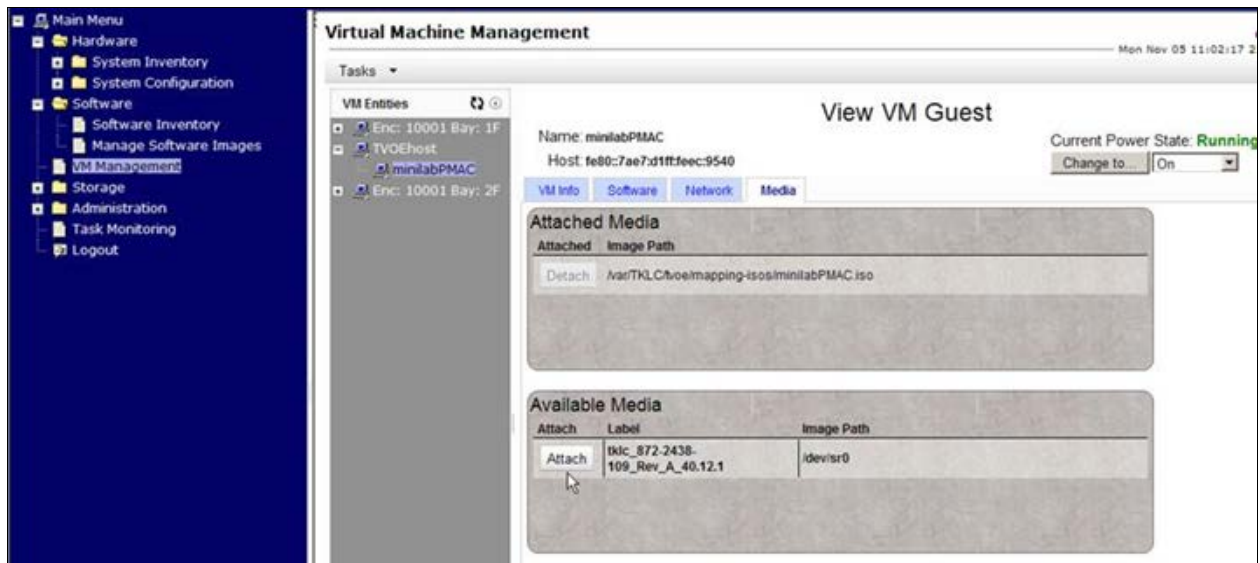
Check that the correct image name appears in the Status column:

8. **PMAC GUI:** Detach the image from the PMAC guest

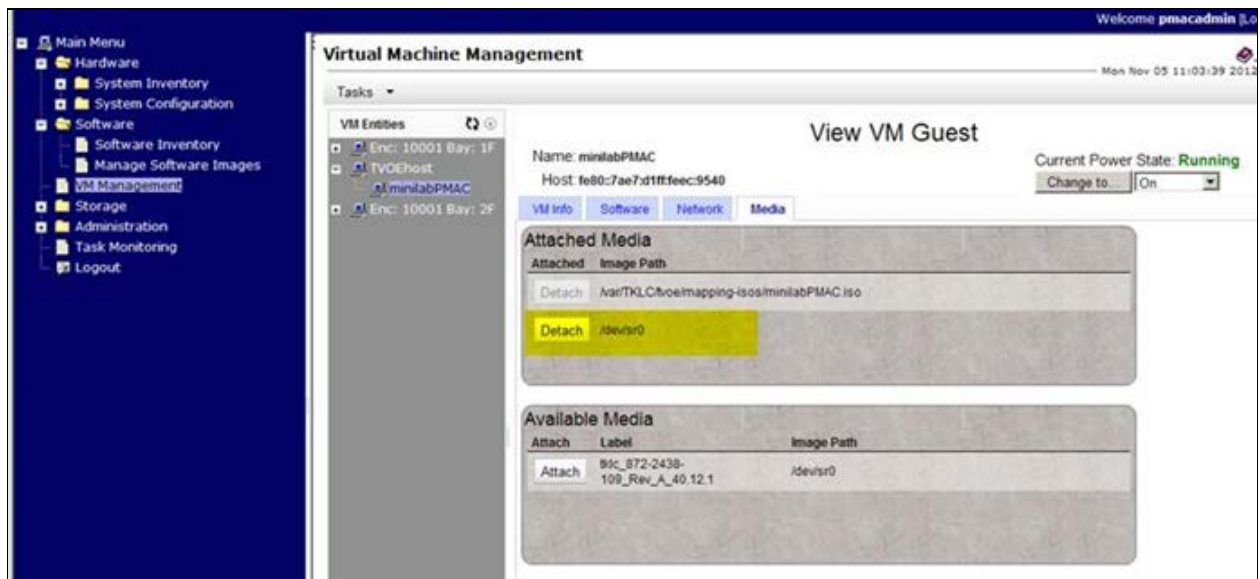
If the image was supplied on CD or USB, return to the PMAC guest's **Media** tab used in Step 3, locate the image in the Attached Media list, and click **Detach**. After a pause, the image will be removed from the Attached Media list. This will release the virtual device for future use.

Remove the CD or USB device from the Management Server.

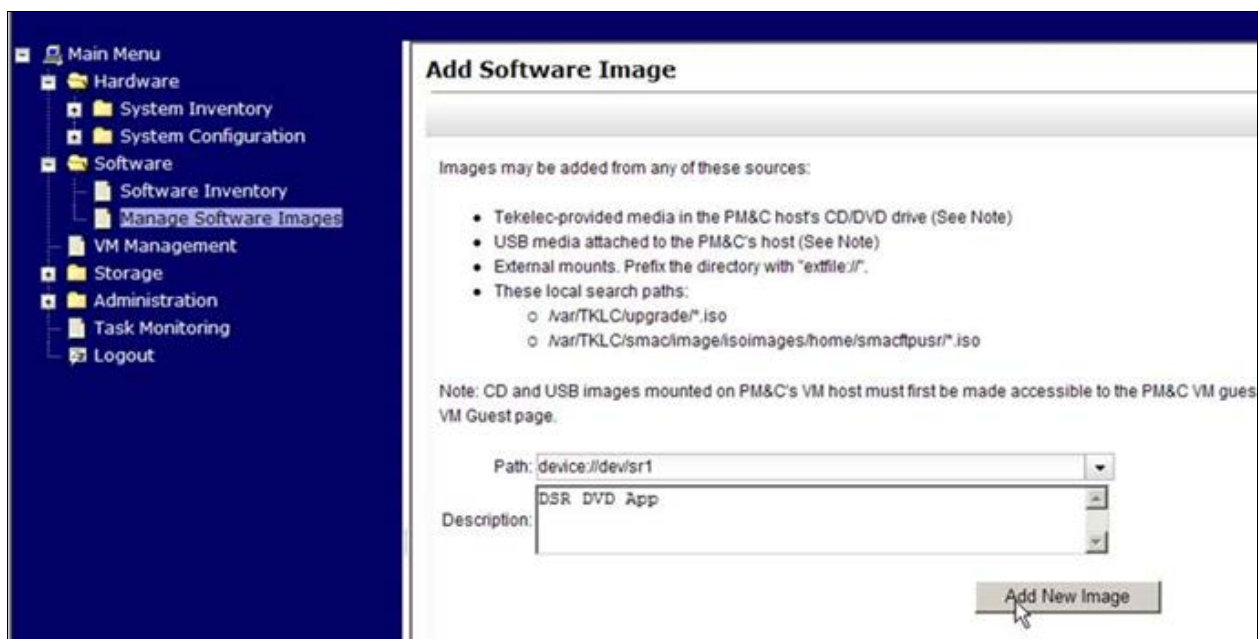
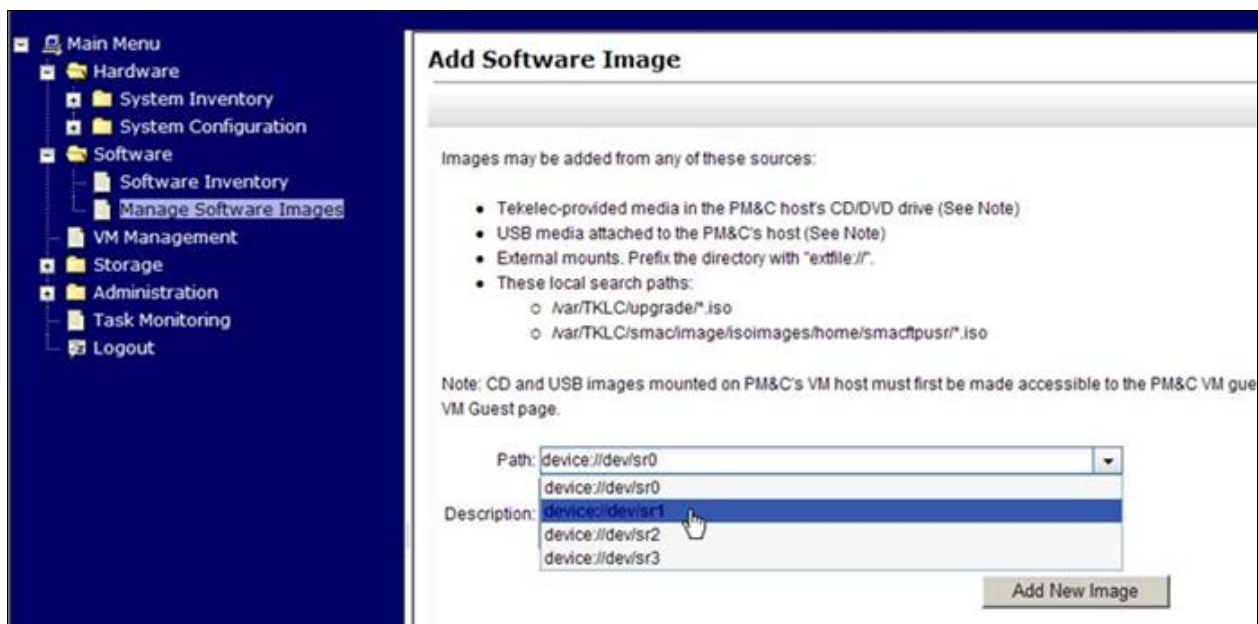
Below are the screen captures:



You will notice the DVD is mounted as /dev/sr0



When adding the Image select /dev/sr1 (even though it was mounted above as /dev/sr0) as shown below:



Task reported as successful:



Image is shown correctly in the PMAC GUI:



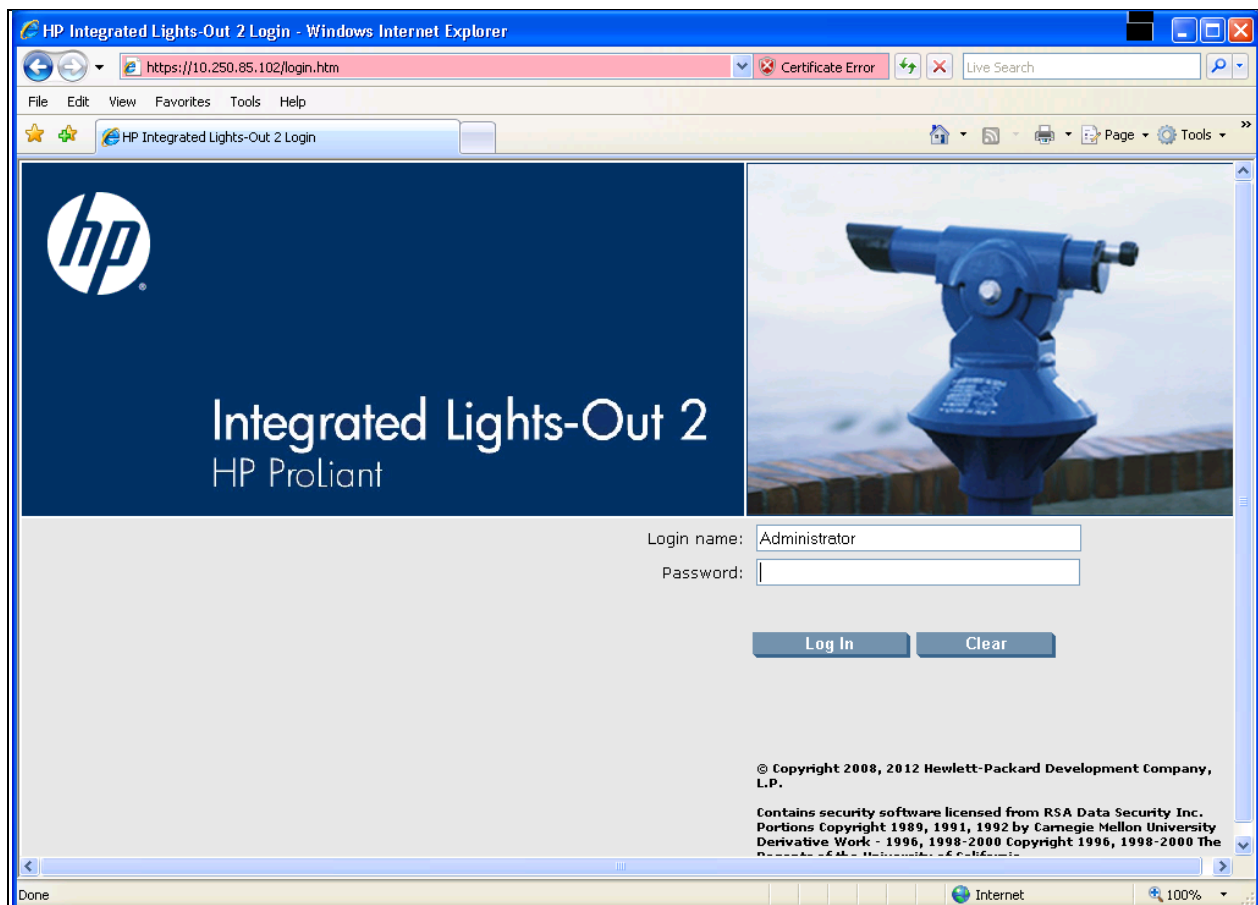
APPENDIX H. USING ILO (OR RMM) TO REMOTELY ACCESS A SERVER

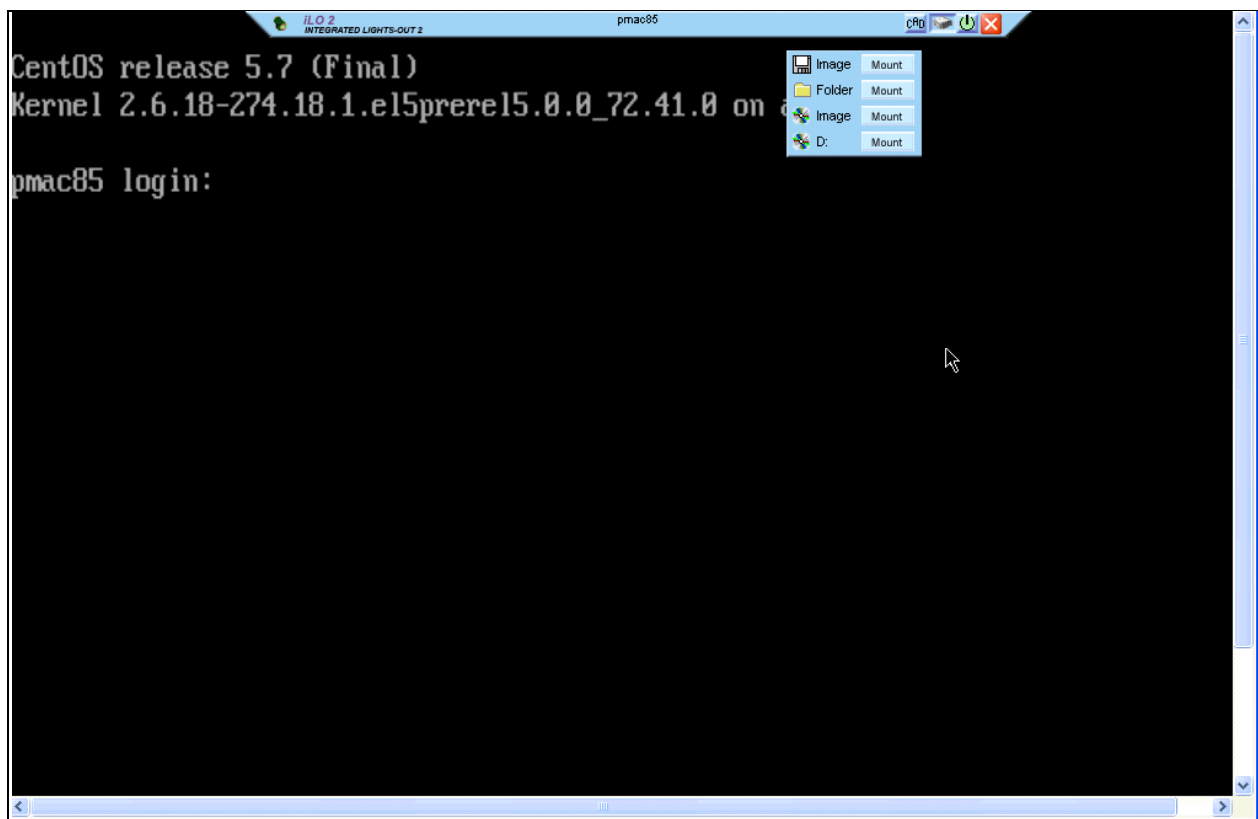
The iLo (or RMM for PP5160) interface of the server is a method to get access to the server, even if it won't boot.

The remote console access option of the iLo (or RMM) can be used to get console access to the server. This has the benefit that the user will see the console output while the server is re-booting.

The remote console access can also be used in case the server IP interfaces are down, and the server state is unknown.

From this interface, it is also possible to mount an ISO located on your computer to the server, using the iLo (or RMM) Virtual Mount utility. You can also remotely force a boot of the server.





APPENDIX I. ACCESSING THE ORACLE CUSTOMER SUPPORT SITE

Access to the Oracle Customer Support site is restricted to current Oracle customers only. This section describes how to log into the Oracle Customer Support site and link to Oracle Support Hotlines

1. Log into Oracle Customer Support site at <https://support.oracle.com>
2. Refer Oracle Support Hotlines <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html> and <http://www.oracle.com/us/corporate/acquisitions/tekelec/support/index.html>

APPENDIX J. USING THE SCREEN SHELL TOOL

The Linux screen tool is provided on the Policy servers, to establish an ssh session that will not be lost during a remote access disconnect. It also provides a method to log user activities and responses into a file.

To execute an action that should not be interrupted, ssh to the server, and start a screen session.

After the session is started, all the same privileges and commands are available but the session will be maintained even if the user connection to the server is broken.

J.1 Start Screen Session

1. SSH to server, login as root

```
# screen
# <user commands for upgrade>
```

2. Terminate a previously started session

```
# exit
```

3. Detach from session

To leave the session, but keep the session running (detach):

```
# screen -d
# exit
```

4. Re-Attach to a previously started session

SSH to server, login as root

```
# screen -ls
```

There is a screen on:

```
31808.pts-0.<hostname> (Detached)
```

5. 1 Socket in /var/run/screen/S-root.

```
# screen -x 31808
```

User is now back in the same session started before the detach or disconnect.

J.2 Screen Logging

Using Ctrl-A then H, creates a running log of the session. Screen will keep appending data to the file through multiple sessions. Using the log function is very useful for capturing what you have done, especially if you are making a lot of changes.

J.3 Screen Help

Ctrl-A then ?

J.4 Other capabilities

The screen tool has multiple capabilities.

Further information is available on the Web.